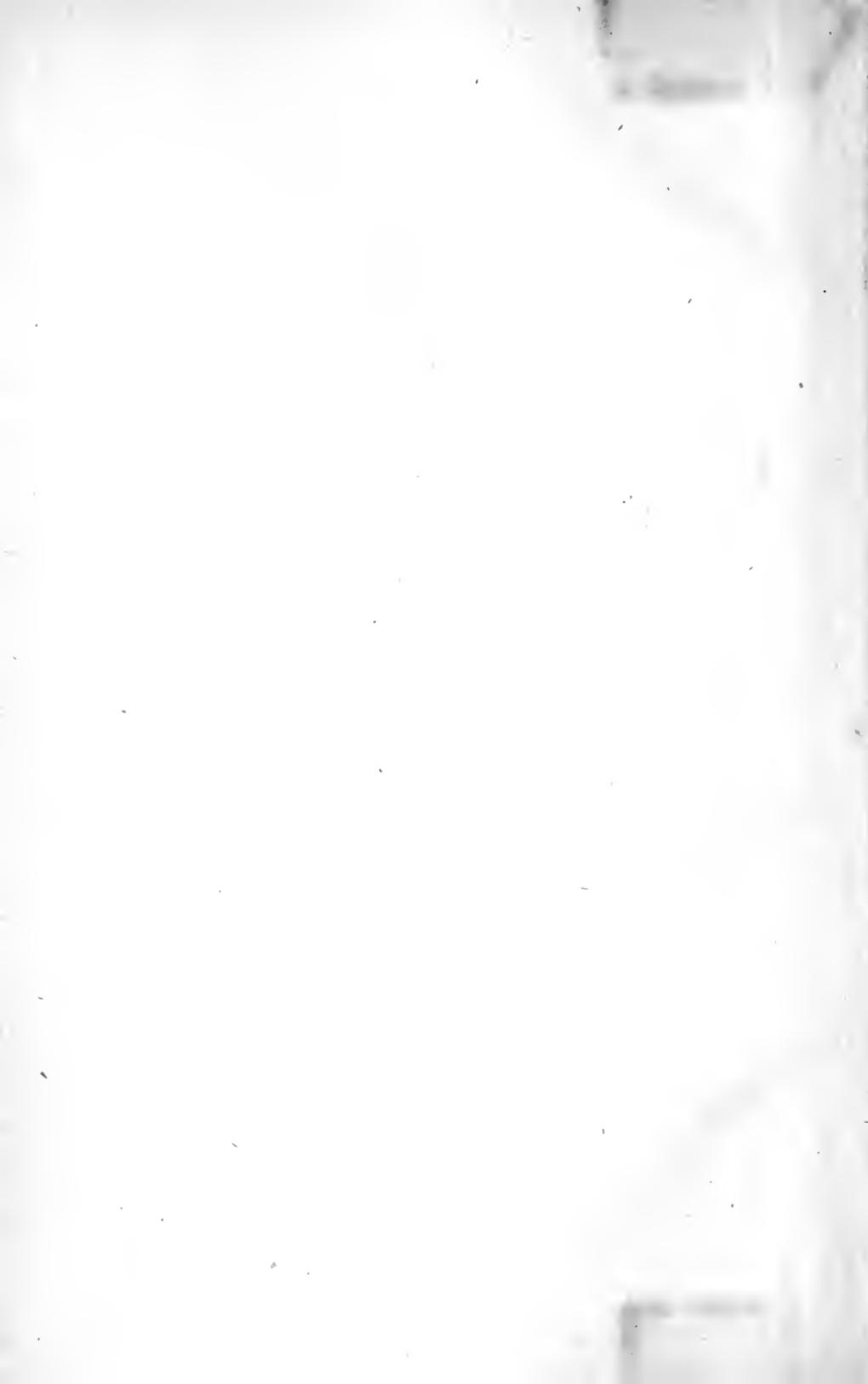


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

A standard linear barcode is located in the top left corner of the white label. It consists of vertical black lines of varying widths on a white background.

3 1761 00361171 2



Charles the Great.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxvii.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

~~PP~~
Early English Text Society
[Publications.] Extra Series
THE No. 36^A37

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. — IV

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.

— — —

EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

.BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR FERUMBRAS," ETC.

38074
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXI.

PR

1119

E5

no. 36-37

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyne*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring $2\frac{3}{8}$ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial woodcut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of Fierabras, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.¹ One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingt et seize. Le xx iour de nouembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy. Le cinqiesme Jour du moys de Juillet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

¹ Introd. to *Sir Ferunbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this Lyf of Charles the Grete at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

¹ See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the King, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euyer thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearlye guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liuerey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^d. ob. [leaf 49 back]. In Checkerolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl^l: his Liuerey is as Knightes, and if he be sick, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sick, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liuerey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eighteene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sick, he taketh such Liuerey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liuerey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liueries [leaf 50]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth therupon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodgeing in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appere in [leaf 50, back] The Accompt of housold. And as for othir things touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus Regis* capitulid before. all things of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges liuery, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellis by record in this office./

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeny, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.² The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

¹ Vide de hoc antea: folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

² The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period :—

[*Ancient Miscellanea.* (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.
VII., William Dawbeney late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [i. e. in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt; vel si aliquae persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibiciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habantur et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predicte."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeny as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.¹

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeny are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as *William Merston*, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Dawbney*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

ib. p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III., p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to *William Dawbeney*, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

¹ Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI, ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500.

said *William Dawbene*y and *Joan* his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,¹ 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, due of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubene*y, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretensed king . . . and also the summe of c. ti. parcell of xxiiij⁴ £. ii by the said late pretensed king borowed of the maire and aldermen of our said citie of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij⁴ £. ii. the said late pretensed king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldermen, on that one partie, and the foresaid *William Daubene*y, then keper of juelx of the said pretensed king on that othre partie therof made, more plainly doth appere.²

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcilles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Dawbene*y, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemund, a color of gold of xx⁴ oz., xxx⁴ ti.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no *William Daubene*y's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame *Joan Dawbene*y, wife of Sir Wm. *Dawbene*y, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].³ John, son and heir of Sir *Giles Dawbene*y, is buried in the same church.

¹ 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

² *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

³ *Stowe's Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeneys. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilȝear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,
Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

Saint Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al thynghes that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuercely. Thenne sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corrobored by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles the thynghes passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce engendre in vs correction of vnlauful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue to vs ensaumple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions digne & worthy of helth, in folowynge the good and eschewyng the euhl. And also in recountyng of hye hystoryes the comune vnderstondyng is better content to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes I haue been exeyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer, chanonne of lausanne, for to reduce for his playsyr somme hystoryes as wel in latyn & in romaunce as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland, Olyner, and other, touchyng² somme werkes haultayne doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul says, "all scriptures are written for our learning,"

and the lives of the ancients give us an example how to live,

I have, at the persuasion of the venerable Canon Henry Bolomyer,

translated this history of Charlemagne and his douzeperes

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

to the best of my
ability, chiefly

from the *Specu-
lum Historiale*.

As I have before
printed the Lives
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of
Boulogne,

I now print this
that all may be
able to read it in
our mother-
tongue.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-
creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue
wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen
of thys mater and the hystoryes dysioyned wythoute 4
ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacyte of my
lytel entendement, And after thystoryes and mater that
I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowynge.
And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8
largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For
I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben
enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour
hystoryal, as by the canonnes and somme other booke 12
whiche make mencyon of the werke folowynge. And
by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable founde-
ment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce.
For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16
the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and
after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be
founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche
the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20
grete ate[n]dacyon, by ¹the playsyr of god, to whome I
submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought
to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion
of euery persone. 24

THenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-
prynte the book of the noble & vyctoryous kyng
Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of cristen
kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englishe the 28
noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyn kyng of
Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme personnes
of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce
thystorye and lyf of the noble and cristen prynce 32
Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce² & emperour of Rome,
the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystoryes,
actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke
as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

¹ A ij. back.

² Ed. frauuce.

quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe
 here in this noble royme of englond. And for to
 satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good^e synguler
 4 lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enpryse^d
 and concluded in my self to reduce this say^d book in to
 our englysshe, as all alonge and^e playnely ye may rede,
 here, and^e see in thys book ¹here folowynge, besechyng
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and^e
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple
 reducynge. and^e though so be there be no gaye termes,
 ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue specyally
 reduced it after the symple connynge that god hath lente
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and^e
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng^e I
 hope truly. And that I may so do & contynue I byseche
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and^e so to laboure and^e
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.

And I ask all my
 readers to pardon
 any imperfections
 in the work,

which I have done
 after my simple
 learning,

for which I bless
 my f^{ather} and
 mother, who sent
 me to school.

24 ¶ ²Here begynnen the chapytres & tyltes of this book folowynge nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin comprised. The contents of this book.

¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth of book I.
 28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowynge declared.

¶ The fyrist partye of the fyrist book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh of the begynnynge of fraunce and^e of kyng^e Cloys. Pt I contains v chapters.

32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynyme vnto kyng^e cloys of the first kings of France. the first crysten kyng^e: capitulo primo

How kyng^e cloys beyng a paynym had^e to wyf of King Cloys. clotildis daughter of the kyng of bourgoyn & meruayl-
 lously : capitulo ij

¹ col. 2.

² A iij.

4 THE CONTENTS OF THE FIRST BOOK. PT. I, CH. II—PT III, CH. I.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wife,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectionately that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ca.	ijij
and of his baptism.	How kyng Clois was vctorious on his enemys by- 4 cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ca.	ijij
Pt II contains v chapters.	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo.	v.
Of King Pepin.	¶ The seconde partie of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrist of kyng pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone.	12
How Charles was made Emperor of Rome.	How Pepyn by hys prudence ¹ was chosen kyng of frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession : capitulo	primo
Of his figure, children, and pursuits.	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyons 16 wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ca.	ij
Pt III contains iii chapters.	Of the copulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuynge : capitulo	ijij 20
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	To whome the kyng Charles & his chyldren sones & doughters were dedyed : capitulo	ijij
and brought home the holy relics.	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuynge and charitable werkes, and other maters : ca.	v 24
	¶ The thyrd partie of the fyrist book conteyneth iij chapytres, & telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.	28
	How the patryarcke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes : capitulo	primo
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to 32 conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca.	ij
	Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon : [ca.]	ijij

¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared. Book II containing iii parts.

¶ The first partie of the second ¹book conteyneth xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt. Pt I contains xvij chapters.

¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynyms, after a lytel of 8 the prologue : ca. primo

Of fyerabras how he came to exercyte charles : of Fierabras capitulo [Ferumbras]. ij

How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour 12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo ij

The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly : Dispute between ca. iiiij

How kyng charles & Rolland ben repreysed by 16 thauctour & excused somwhat vpon the debate afor- sayd : capitulo v

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras notwythstondyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj

20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he shold not fyȝt with the geaunt, but for al that he went forth : capitulo viij

How Olyuer spake fyrist to fyerabras, whych set no 24 thynȝt by hym, with other desputacions. viij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix

28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the of the fight, prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x

How Olyuer made hys prayer ²to god whan he felte hym hurte : Capitulo xij

32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was slain : capitulo xij and of the bottles of holy balm.

How fyerabras & olyuer fouȝt togyder on fote mer-

¹ A iij, bk.

² col. 2.

uaylously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer :
capitulo xij

How Oliver over-
came Fierabras,
How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed
by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes 4
of Fyerabras. [ca.] xij

How Fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed byleued in god,
and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was
assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca. xv 8

but was himself
taken by the
Saracens.
How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld py-
tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe
men : capitulo xvij

¶ The second partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij 12
chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of
fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to
speke to ballant thadmyral.

¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16
baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca. j

How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant
thadmyral and cruelly passyoned by pryon : capitulo ij

Of the pryon where the frensshe men were lodged 20
and how they were vysyted by fayr Flotypes, ¹doughter
of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo ² iij

How the frensshe men were had oute of pryon and
vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24
chambre : capitulo iij

How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij
peres of fraunce, whyche wold not gladly haue goon
thyder : capitulo v 28

How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles
to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by
the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vij

Of the meruaylous brydge of mantryble, of the 32
tribute that must be there payed for the passage, & how
with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed ouer. [ca.] vij

How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and
what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

Of the Bridge of
Mantrible.

¹ A iiiij.

² Ed. capitulo.

How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were saued & lodged to-gyder & knownen by her, & resонned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other 4 maters: capitulo	ix	How Floripes saved the French knights.
How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre & after was slayne by due naymes in blowynge of the cole: capitulo	x	Of the death of Lucifer,
8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongly by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntement a gyrdel was taken 1 ^o fro his daughter: capitulo	xij	and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,
12 How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre, & how the goddes were by them confounded: ca.	xij	which was be- sieged by Balan.
How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, & 16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle: capitulo	xij	
How guy of burgoyn was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylainously & examyned of ballant thadmyral, 20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo	xiiij	of the capture of Guy,
How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyn, seyng the crysten men, whyche socoured 24 hym puissantly. [ca.]	xv	and his rescue.
How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fouzt with the paynynms	xvj	
28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl doun by enchauntement, & how the frensshe men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the paynynms: capitulo	xvij	of the burning of the tower by Balan.
32 Here begynneth the thyrd parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvij chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce ² made to them socours, and the pay- nems confused & destroyed.	xviij	Pt III contains xvi chapters.

Of the mocyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. fraunce.

How the French determined to send Richard to Charles for help.

Of the death of Clarion.

and shewe ¹ theyr assayres vnto kyng Charles, & how
rycharde of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym:
capitulo primo

How after that Rychard was departed the kyng 4
claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the
whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valyauntly, &
other maters: capitulo ij

How the hors of rychard cam & retorne^d thru^{gh} 8
thexcersy^te of thadmyral & was seen & knownen of the
peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had
ben deed^d, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept:
ca. iii 1

How Richard passed the river Flagot.

How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorne^d 16
wythoute goyng^t ony ferther, by the councely of the
traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v

and reached
Charles.

How after the complaynte of Charles rycharde of
normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete 20
necessytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they
were in : capitulo vj

How the French army passed the bridge of Martrible.

How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Normandye with iij other barons the stronge brydge of 24 mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what manere man was galafre: ca. vij

How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred
into man²tryble after that Galafre was dece^d, not-with- 28
stondyng that a lorde the traytre was contrarye to hym,
& many other maters. [ca.] viij

Of Amyot
the giantess.

How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe
dyd gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32
hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral
whan he knewe the tydylnges: ca. ix

How the peres of fraunce were assayled more

¹ A iij, bk.

² col. 2.

strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was quasi smyten doun to the erthe & after recomforted by the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :	Of the fortunes of the knights besieged by Balan,
4 capitulo	x
How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel- lon bare hym meruayllously whan he was sent forth	and how they saw Charles coming to their aid.
8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.]	xij
How charles thenperour ordeyned x bataylles, & how they recountred the bataylles of puyssance of Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,	
12 & other maters : ca.	xij
How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng was slain by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after- ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the	How Reyner slew Sortybrant.
16 frensshe men : capitulo	xij
How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad- myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca.	Of the capture of Balan,
20 ¶ How ballant thadmyral for all the admonyeion that was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &	and his death, and of the baptism and marriage of Floripes.
24 she quene of that contre : capitulo	xv
How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvij	
28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.	Book III contains ij parts.
¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xij chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two	Pt I contains xij chapters.
32 grete geantes.	
How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo	How at the bid- ding of St James Charles invaded Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme of theym were by hym cursed ¹ : capitulo	ij
Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght not be beten doun, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4 therof : capitulo	ijij
and of the church which he built to the saint.	
Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other chyrches that he dyd ¹ there do founde: [ca.]	iiij
How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8 spayne & destroyed and put to deth the cristen men Charles recouerd ¹ it, & other maters: capitulo	v
How Aigoland challenged Charles,	
¹ How aigoland sent to Charles that he shold feably come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12 how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, & other maters: capitulo	vj
How charles accompanied with moche peple retorne to the place forsaid & took the cite of agenne, & other 16 maters : capitulo	vij
How the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan he was retorne in to fraunce, & what barons he had ¹ in his companye, and of theyr puyssance : capitulo	vij
Of the tryewes of charles & of aigolant & of the deth of his peple, & wherfore aigoland was not bap- tysed : ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aigolant & of his peple, & how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24 concupyscence of money, & the cristen founden dede by myracle : ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant, how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out daunger, & how afterward rolland fouȝt ayenst hym : 28 ca.	xj
by whom he was vanquished.	
Of Ferragus the giant,	
and his duel with Roland.	
How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by what meane Ferragus was slain by rolland : ca.	xij
How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc- tyon : ca.	xij

How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chirches ¹ of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y ^e pryncepal 4 chyrches : [ca.]	xij	of the church built by Charles to St James.
¶ The second ^d partie of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce.		Pt II contains x chapters.
8 How the trayson was compryset ^d by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreued ^d by thauctour : ca.	j	of the treason of Ganelon.
12 Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland ^d was hurte wyth four speres mortally after that al his peple were slain and ^d deed ^d : capitulo	ij	
16 How Rolland ^d deyed ^d moche holyly after many maters & orysons made, and ^d prayed ^d to god ^d moche deuoutely, and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal: capitulo	ij	of the death of Roland.
20 Of the vysion of the deth of rolland shewed to tharchebisshop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters.	iiij	and how Turpyn saw it in a vision.
24 How olyuer was founden slain, and ^d of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo	v	of the deaths of Oliver and Ganelon.
28 How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankynges and ^d preysynges to god ^d and ^d to Saynt Denys: And ^d of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo	vij	
32 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed ^d holyly, ² and ^d of his deth shewed to tharchebisshop Turpyn, and ^d of his buryeng ^d Imperally : ca.	vij	of the death and burial of Charles.
Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and ^d of hys deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo	vij	
The excusacyon of thauctour. [ca.]	ix	
Thenuoye of thauctour : ca.	x	

¶ Explicit

¹ A v, bk.² col. 2.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynmys vnto kyng'
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo
primo]

Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francus, a

companion of
Æneas,

and of the kings
of France after
him.

AS it is redde in thystoryes of the troians 4
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of
Troye there was a kyng' moche noble named
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for
the felycye of his name he dyd compose & do edyfye a
cyte whiche he named fraunce, & so folowyng' all the
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhaunced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensche men v yere. The
second was marcurius xxxij yere; The iij pharamundus
regned xj yere; The iiij clodus xiiiij yere; The v 16
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst cristen kyng' whyche
regned vpon the frensche men after thyncernacion of
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

THow the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Guidengus,
King of Bur-
gundy, and his
four sons.

IN that tyme was kyng' of the burgoynons guy-
dengus, the whiche had iij sones al of good
aage, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij ²godo-
gesylus, the iij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after

¹ A vj.

² col. 2.

henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned^t hyr. This hyspericus had two fayre doughters, thedest was named^t throne whom agabondus her vncle
 4 bannysshed^t fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssymyled. The yonger of these ij douzters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng^t thys the kyng clodoneus, or
 8 Cloys in frensshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued^t with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyldys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng
 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd^t messagers notyfyed^t it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed^t of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,
 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng^t those dayes the kyng Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named
 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente
¹ to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and^t dyssymyled, & left his good^t habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche
 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomlysshed^t this mayde Clotildis,
 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng^t fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad^t & wel
 32 contente kyssed^t hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed^t hyr honde & sent for to seche hym by hyr seruaunt. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis,
daughter of
Hyspericus,
and of her great
beauty.

Cloys sends
Aurelian in dis-
guise to see
Clotildis.

He presents him-
self before her to
receive alms.

She sends for him,

¹ A vj. back.

and asks him
who he is,
and his object in
coming.

Aurelian tells her,
and presents the
ring of Cloys.

Clotildis says she
cannot marry a
pagan.

Next year Cloys
demands Clotildis
to wife from Aga-
bondus,

who at first re-
fuses, but after-
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the rynge of kyng cloys & humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde began to say to hym ; "saye to me wherfore dyssymylest thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus 4 answerd : "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am a messenger of the noble kyng cloys kyng of Fraunce, whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng enformed of your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8 for to be quene," & forthwith he ¹presented to hir the rynge of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to the tresour of agabondus hir vncle, & sayd to the messenger that he shold recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12 tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she prayed hym that of al this he shold say noo worde, & that she wold not doo but as the kyng wold. & vpon 16 this poynt aurelianuſ came and shewed al to the kyng, wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng sent ageyn his messenger aurelianuſ to agabondus vncle of Clotildis for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20 thentenyon of kyng cloys he answerd to the messenger : "Say hardyly to the kyng thy lord that he hath lytel to do in desyryng to haue my nyece to wyf :" but the bourgoynons wyse counseylours, redoubtyng the puyaunce of kyng Cloys, by good councely whan they had wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng & founde the rynge of kyng cloys which cloyldis had layed therin, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28 wente & concluded to performie the wylle of kyng clois : & vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuerd Clotildis to aurelianuſ & he brouȝt hir with his peple with grete Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete ²playsyr to see 32 thyſ fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnyte after the maner royal he espoused hir after the custome of his lawe.

¹ col. 2.

² A vij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the
quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'
byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other
4 maters : capitulo ijj

THe fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre
that the kyng' and the quene shold' slepe to-
gyder, Clotyldis embraced' wyth the loue of god
8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord' went and said'
to the kyng': "My right dere lord, I requyre the
that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde
byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The
12 kynge sayd: "demaunde what thou wylt For I am
wel contente." Clotyldys thenne sayd to hym: "Fyrst,
I demaunde, requyre, and admonest the that thou wylt
byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made
16 heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in
Ihesu Cryst his gloryous sone, kyng' of alle kynges,
which by his passyon hath redemed' the. And in the
20 holy ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good
werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the
foresayd Trynyte in one onely essen[ce], to whome
ought to be gyuen al honour and all lawde & byleue.
Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and leue
24 the ydolles mad' wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng
and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrches
whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the
that thou wylt demaunde my parte and porcyon of the
28 goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondus myn
vnkle whom he dyd' put to deth falsely and wythoute
occasyon, but the vengeance I leue to god." whan she
had said this the kyng answerd: ¶ "Thou hast
32 demaunded me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer
strayt & hard to graunte, that is that I shold' forsake
my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes
two requests of
Cloys.

First, that he will
become a
Christian

and forsake his
false gods.

Secondly, that he
will demand her
dowry from Aga-
bondus.

Cloys begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request.

Cloys sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

onely god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd : "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I suplye & byseche the that thou 4 wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he shold as soone haue ¹alle his royme as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym : "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellis he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bournynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng : "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyece of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyances with clois the kyng and wyth all the frensshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that warse is, wythout mynde of god " And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrainyd to the council of the bournynons hys 24 people, sente a grete partie of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysiting his royme The quene clotildis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd 28 of a sone whome shē dyd do baptysē, And contynuelly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do therafter. And whan the chylde was baptysēd anone it exspyd 32 & dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene : ²"yf thou haddest gyuen hym and delyerd hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

¹ A vij, back. ² col. ij.

quene answerde: "for this thyng I am noo thyng perturbed in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynge to god my creatour by cause he hath me so digne
4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his
royalme of heuen the fyrist fruyt of my wombe." After,
the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named
Iodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame
8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.

A second son
also falls ill after
baptism.

And whan the kyng^t sawe it languysshe he beyng^t euyl
contente said to the quene : " and now,"¹ sayd he,
" it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was
12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente
thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng^t them." Thenne the
quene for the fere of the kyng^t prayed^t to god^t deuoutely
for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was
16 guarysshed^t and^t hool.

but through the queen's prayers recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was vyctoryous of hys
enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu
Cryste: Capitulo iiiij

Clois attacks the Germans.

but is defeated with heavy loss

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make
warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so
perseuerynge the ²allemayns had vytorye on
the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-
24 thrown & slain. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the
dystructyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde
the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see
tofore your eyen the mortal destructyon of your peple,
28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych
hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady
the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on."
Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in
32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen
and wepte moche largely, and wyt grete pyte thus

Aurelian calls on the king to be converted.

Ed. how,

2 A viij.

and the king
yields to his
entreaties.

Clois having
acknowledged
himself a
Christian prays
to God for aid.

He gains a victory
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty, on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4 socour that I may be vyctoryous of myn enemyes by experyence presently. I byleue¹ on the, and in thy name I shalle baptyse me. I haue demaunded my goddes for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8 for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo comforthe whan they may not helpe them that requyre them. Wherfore to the as veray god and lord I requyre the that I may be delyuered by thy hye puissaunce fro 12 myn aduer²saryes." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & murdere began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng was deed, wherfore they that abode yelded them to 16 kyng cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that contreye vnder hys obayssaunce & puissaunce payeng 20 yerely trybute. Thenne after this vyctory by the puissaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned 24 vyctorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle
was brouȝt the holy ampulle by an aungel
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges
of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildis sends
for Remigius
to baptise Clois.

A Fter that the quene had herde the kyng whyche
was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the
vyctorye whych he had obteyned shie had grete 32
Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop

¹ Ed. byleueue.

² col. ij.

of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for to preche to the kyng¹ his saluacyon & the manere of the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that 4¹ he had² wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst, And³ the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng⁴ the errore of thydolles they began al to byleue in god⁵ & 8 say: "Syr kyng⁶ gloryous, it is best that ye forsake thydolles and adoure the god⁷ Immortal whome the quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be contente." Incontynent al this was shewed⁸ to saynt 12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them dylygently as a good⁹ herdman that taketh grete Payne to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng¹⁰ and 16 hys prechynge dyd¹¹ soo grete prouffyte that it made the peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy baptesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen. wherfore the necessytye of the saluacion of thys kyng 20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed¹² to byleue, conioyned to good¹³ entencyon maad¹⁴ affectuously saynt Remyge to come, for he thought wel whan the kyng¹⁵ was baptysed¹⁶ and byleued¹⁷ in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements 24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold¹⁸ do the same wyse. And¹⁹ whan saynt remyge was comen and²⁰ commyned with the kyng touchyng²¹ his salua²² cyon [he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptys²³ hym 28 honourably, and²⁴ dyd²⁵ do²⁶ paynte the hystoryes after somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and repayred²⁷ the places ryght delycously. ¶ And²⁸ on that other he dyd²⁹ do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly, 32 & compose baptyzatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan al this was done ⁴y^o kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes, and by his preaching converts the whole French nation,

who urge the king to forsake idolatry.

St. Remigius makes preparations for the baptism of Clois.

¹ A viij, back. ² col. 2. ³ Ed. to.

⁴ The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And thenne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of god¹ saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere. ¶ “Syr kyng, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure entencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4 this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al vanyte and do no thynge but excersite of dampnacyon. And¹ ye ought to byleue wyth ryȝt humble hert in one onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8 ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouȝt to gyue fayth and creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone, whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature ¹wold 12 take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence of our fyrst fader Adam. And¹ that was conceyued in the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16 deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed and roos fro deth to lyf, and after ascended in to heuen, and sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro thens shal come and Judge the lyuyng¹ and deed¹. 20 ¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque moder, & her ordonnayre.” and whan saynt Remyge had ynough enformed the kyng¹ and the peple of our fayth and byleue he baptysed¹ them in the name of the 24 fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And¹ whan he came to enoyntyng¹ after the custome of the holy cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the plesyr of god¹ and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28 stondyng² sodeynlye came doun descendyng fro heuen a doue shynyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy cresme was, wherwyth the kyng¹ cloys was fyrst 32

[printed taptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr manere: “Syr Kyng, it is tyme that ȝe ought of pure Intencion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme ȝe haue byleued on.”

¹ B j.

² Ed. stondyug¹.

He delivers an exhortation to the king.

Remigius declares the articles of the Christian faith.

Clois and all his subjects are baptised.

A dove brings from heaven a vessel containing chrism.

enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresme that is therin the kynges of fraunce ¹onelye been 4 enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng^t and thre thousand^t men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorye.

with which all
kings of France
since have been
consecrated.

8 ¶ The second' partie of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone.

12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j

16 **T**He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng^t Cloys the fyrist crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, whych was the kyng^t Pepyn of another lygnage. And the 20 Kynge whyche was the xxijij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which ²kyng^t deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for 24 to lede a soltarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce. And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprySED, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfcialy to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn 32 the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a

After the death of
Clois Hildricus
becomes king,

but gives up
the throne to
become a monk.

Pepin's demand
of Pope Zachary,

¹ col. ij.

² B j, back.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thyng and is abandonned and gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the 4 name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and veray equyte ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & 8 contynueth it. For whyche answer & demaunde the Frensshe men by cunceyl¹ approuued consydered theyr kyng hyldrycus professed in a monasterye in lyf solytarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12 yng ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen solytaryly,) how wel a kyng ought not to be solytarye, For suche as is the Kyng suche is the Royame. ¶ For salomon sayth, yf the kyng be neclgent the peple 16 wote not what to doo, And blesyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng wel enformed of the condycions apperteynyng to a kynge after an auctour that sayth thus : ¶ "The Prynce 20 whan he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and ought not to take but seruautes propyre³ and necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and not to nour- 24 ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffyt- able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold eschewe multyplacayon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold not cor- 28 rupte hys subgettes by euyl exaumple. He shold not breke hys espousaylles, he shold gladly rede in booke & shold haue by hym peple wel letterd, And shold Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges ⁴he 32 shold adoure & serue god: he shold not gladly take yestes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers."

and the Pope's answer.

The duties and qualities of a king.

He should not keep too many horses or servants,

nor keep bad company.

He should be a good husband, fond of learning, just,

and, above all, religious.

¹ Ed. ceunceyl.

² col. 2.

⁴ B ij.

³ Ed. propyee.

Alle thys thynge wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be 4 kyng¹ of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned² nomore vpon the frensshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boneface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles¹ the grete was confermed² and approuued and ordeyned² all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedyction to suc- cede fro lygnage to lygnage moost neste. And the said 12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were op- posaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd². ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he 16 ordeyned² the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attri- buted² by good ryght to hym by vyctorye obteyned², and was buryed² in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce. 20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd² whome he had² gotten on the noble quene berte, doughter² of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had² con- 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng¹ the kyng¹ Charles was chosen and² maad² Emperour of Rome. And the sayd² kynge Pepyn regned xvij yere in pros- peryte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder 28 of the sayd Charles had² regned² in his partie of the royame ij yere he deyed², And thenne after alle the gouernement hoolly of the royame of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly 32 shewed².

Pepin is chosen
king by the
French,

and consecrated
by St. Boniface.

He makes war
against the
English.

At his death he
leaves two sons,

between whom
his kingdom is
divided.

On the death of
his brother
Charlemagne
becomes sole
king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad'
many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

¹ *Ed. repeats* and charles.

² col. 2.

& how he was emperor of Rome: capitulo ij

THIS noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puyssaunce, and operacions virtuous by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was¹ onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope ²adryan regned & dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annullyng the heresyes and constytutynge ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And to many other labours merytories adioyned in the seruice of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyctorye of them in dyuers³ maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome.

And whan he came to pauye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soioured a lytel tyme, And after wyth a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorne he took pauye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr he retorne to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche.

And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops ⁴in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he shal conferme and the rebellys that shall gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

His labours in the service of the church.

At the invitation of Pope Adrian Charles visits Rome.

He lays siege to Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council is held at Rome.

¹ *Ed.* he was. ² B ij, back. ³ *Ed.* dyners. ⁴ col. 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of fraunce, whyche al had^t promysed fydelyte one to that 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.

After many
bloody wars he
reduces Italy
under his power.

In that tyme many mortal warres duryng^t the lyf of kyng^t Pepyn & of charles and^t after that the royame of lombardye was destroyed and delyuered^t of the mys- 8 creauntes, And^t maa^d pees not wythoute grete trauayll for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned^t to hys playsyr he reduced^t alle ytalye vnder the trybute 12 of the royame of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to gyue thankynges and^t laude to god^t moche deuoutelye for vyctorye that he had^t and^t for execusyon doon vpon 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And^t there with the pope Adryan he maa^d many constytucyons whyche by ry^t equyte ought wel to be obserued^t. And after he beyng^t thus in Rome vyctoryous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned 20 & consecrate kyng^t of the ytalians, And^t hys sone lowys was ordeyned^t and^t consecrate kyng^t vpon guyan. thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete ancyante were 24 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned^t for themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the senatours and^t other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this poynte, after that they had^t taken delyberacyon of grete 28 cunceyl, seeyng^t the grete value and^t noblesse of kyng^t Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche herafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he 32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange & exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerabile, And^t by the honde of Pope Leo he was crowned^t emperour with alle honoures that myght be compryseed^t. And^t al wyth one

His son Pepin is
consecrated king
of Italy; and his
second son Louis
king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen
Emperor of
Rome.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maađ hym kyng
of ytalyens. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kynge Charles, and' of
the maner of hys lyung': capitulo ijj

Of the good
works of Charles
during his reign
of 33 years.

According to
Turpin

Charles was
more than 8 feet
high, stout,
broad-shouldered,
and large of limb,

with a beard a
foot long.

His face was
long and fair :
his eyes bright
and sparkling.

¹ **C**Harlemayn Kynge of Fraunce after that he was
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and ⁸
regned emperor thyrteny yere, And had thenne
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxij yere. And in
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche ¹²
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was
his werkes wytnessen : as moche as toucheth thexercyte
of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of ¹⁶
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man
wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys
syght and regarde fyers & malycyous. ¶ The lengthe ²⁰
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure
of his feet, which were merueyllously long ; fatte, and
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The ²⁴
armes and thydes he had ample and large : he was a
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was ²⁸
a foot longe : ² he had hys nose reyzed vpon a roundnes :
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had thys man : he had
the face of a large fote brode ; he had the eyen like a
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his ³²
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng

¹ col. 2.

² B ij, back.

his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrded was viij fote longe wyt-h-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was 4 contente wyt-h lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes, or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok, or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrely 8 wyt-h a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a lytel thynge to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght armed wyt-h one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he 12 had bytwene hys handes iij hors shoen wyt-h oute ouermoche prouyng hys myght he wold ryȝt them oute and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyt-h one hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym 16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had in hym thre thynge moche honourable: Fyrst, in yeftes ye¹ uying he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal 20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he promysed thynge that he myght not gyue, forthwyth he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce 24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme thynge. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte 28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And, thyrdrylly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduyse^d: whan he spake he thought strongly on that he sayd & whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for 32 to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

His waist was
8 feet round.

At his dinner he
could eat a
quarter of
mutton, or a
goose, or a
peacock, or a
hare.

His strength
was wonderfni.

He could lift an
armed knight
with one hand.

He was liberal to
all,

just and merciful,
and careful in his
language.

¶ To what thynge kyng Charles hys sone and
hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte
to doo : capitulo iiij

DAme bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4
ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour
waxed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and
ordeyned bookees for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.

¶ Of ¹whome fyrst charles took gladly Payne for to 8
estudye, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence
to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan
they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the

Charles had his
sons taught
religion, science,

jousting,
the art of war,
and hunting.

His daughters
were taught to
spin and sew,
and other suitable
accomplishments.

Charles was never
idle, but fond of
study.

He built at Acon
a splendid church
to our Lady.

seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12
for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he
made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse
the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd
not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16

and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to
chyualry contynually. After this he made his doughters
to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other
honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20
slouthe & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue
occasyon to falle in thouȝt dysordynate for to haue
Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not
occupyed in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24

employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thynge to
thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the
pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do
alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28
holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencyon
damnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in
Acon in Almayn a ²chyrche of our lady compryse^d of
meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyned, and 32
wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a
parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

¹ B iiij.

² col. 2.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplifycacyon of hys
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by puyssance in the royme of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng,
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-
8 ters: capitulō v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
contynued in them: And by ardaunt desyre
12 frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vysyted on mornynges and on euenes & in
the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrificyses & oblaciōns:
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and his alma-giving,
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely ¹the poure folke of
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &
syluer and vytayll after the necessyte of the place: as
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other
24 contreyes: as he that sayd: "gold and syluer is not
myn." To euery man he desyred amytie and pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the
28 heeres in grete reurence, & the vysage Ioyous. he had
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
aboue alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper.
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede
the soule whiche is perpetuel of sprituel fode, for to

of the religious
habits of Charles,

both at home and
abroad.

He was large of
body, and of a
pleasing
countenance.

He loved to hear
books read,

¹ B iiiij, back.

especially the
De Civitate Dei
by Augustine.

He sent
commissioners to
study and report
on the state of his
kingdoms, and
the government
and laws of other
countries.

Aaron, king of
Persia, sends him
as a present an
elephant.

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker,
as of refeccyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,
And emonge al other bookees he delyted strongly in
the bookees of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche 4
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8
bedde two ¹or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.
Thus Charles perseuerd² in felicitye ryal and emperyal,
& sente oueral thorugh hys empyre hys messagers and 12
grete cunceyllours³ for to vysyte hys prouynces and
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and
made many constytucyons & lawes accordyng⁴ to the 16
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles
sente thorugh al the world for to knowe ouer al the
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were
halowed and made of them bookees for tabyde in eternal
memorye. & euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng¹ that 24
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng¹
that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor
he exersycyng his sprituuel werkes he was byloued & 28
dere reputed of every body. In that tyme Aaron the
kyng¹ of perse for the magnyfycence of charles sente to
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler
⁴yefte and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in
suche renommee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. perseuerd.

³ Ed. cunceyllours.

⁴ B v.

aaron the kyng^t of Perse sente to hym emonge other
yeftes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and of saynt
speratus and the heed^t of saynt Panthaleon marters in
4 to Fraunce.

and the relics of
several saints.

¶ The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth
thre chapytres, and' speketh how by
reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the
8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynyme.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to
Charles for socours after that he was de-
iecte and' caste oute of the Turkes: capi-
12 tulo primo.

Tis redde that in the tyme that charles was em-
perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo
oppressyd^t of the paynyme by mortall warre that
16 vnnethe he myght sau hym self. And thus whan he
knewe nomore what to do He had^t in remembraunce the
noble charles and he beyng^t enformed^t of hys holynes,
for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-
20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the
1¹cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of
the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and defendour of
holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-
24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and to hys
sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste
and another whyche named^t hym self Dauyd archeprest,
whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to
28 charles, And wyth them tweyne he ordeyned^t for to goo
wyth them two other whychie were named^t ysaac and
Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his
owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Con-
32 stantyn had^t wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:
“On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a

The patriarch of
Jerusalem, being
hard pressed by
the Saracens,

appeals to Charles
for help.

Constantine
writes a letter to
Charles,

he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng' ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes: 'Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doyng of the paynyme whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo! what thou shalte doo. Pourchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng of the gallyens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy 8 chyrsche.' And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had ¹hys shelde rede, gyrded wyth hys swerde, & had his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And 12 the heed of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre: & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynynge and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body: 16 he had eyen shynynge as ij sterres, and hys hecrys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton: 'O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynge: be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclamed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere² and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo fermerly.' And as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had deicted the paynyme oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myȝt nomore he sente his messengers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan 28 the messengers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacion of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynyme. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and maad hym to preche ³openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

¹ B v, back.

² Ed. preseuere.

³ col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete compayne wente
4 for to conquer the holy lande, and many
other maters : capitulo ij

After that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was
8 publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct
and dyd do crye it thorugh out al the contreye,
that euery man that myȝt bere armes shold be redy for
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynyme, and he that wold
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vyctorye vnder the con-
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in
to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete Payne,
and Charles thought to passe it in ¹one daye : wherfore
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was
ful of dyners wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al
abasshed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe ony habytacyon,
but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormitorye, trustyng of
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the
psaulter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all
who can bear
arms to assemble.

An enormous
army comes
together, and
they start for
the Holy Land.

They lose their
way in a forest.

Charles prays to
God for help.

¹ B vj.

A bird comes and
tells him his
prayer is heard,

and afterwards
guides them to
the right road.

Charles clears the
country of
Saracens,

and prepares to
return home.

The Emperor
collects a large
number of valua-
ble presents for
him,

say the vers folowynge "Deduc me domine in semita mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys : 4 "kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that were presente were moche troubled. and notwythstondyng^t al thys the kyng contynued to say the psaulter vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8 whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? 'O frensshe man, what sayest thou?'" And after that the Kyng^t and hys compayne wente and folowed the byrde 12 whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche they had^t lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes so doyng. But whan charles & hys grete puyssaunce 16 were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled^t of theyr comyng^t & the crysten lordes were gretely reioysted of theyr comyng^t. For wythoute cessyng^t he rested^t not tyl that he had^t recouerd the contreye of 20 crysten men and expelle^t alle the paynynms whyche moche redounded^t to hym grete honour & vyctorye. And in retournyng^t he demaunded^t of themperour of Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24 arkes & archepreestes. And themperour helde hym an hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperor for thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates of the cyte dyd do·ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28 & dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it for somme rewarde for the grete good^t that he had^t doon in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32 he took counciell of hys people what he ought to ²doo in takyng^t of the precyous & ryche yeftes or to retourne in to fraunce wythout takyng of ony thyng^t, And there

vpon his barons counciell hym that he shold take no
thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but
for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content
4 of thys answer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete
payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles refuses to accept any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles
brought fro constantynoble and' fro the
8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were
doon: capitulo ij

12 **W**HAN themperour of constantynople and the patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd, he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them, & whan he was thus constrainyd he bysought them that for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat

16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.

Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast
euer man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to
deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in
20 especciall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whynch
shold¹ treate & see the relyques. Whan it came to
the thyrde day the noble Charles by grete contrycyon
confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After

24 that moche reuerently they beganne to syng the
letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psaulter. And
there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche
in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the
28 preciosa crowne of Ihesu Crist and there sprang oute

28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute
of the same so grete an odour that all they that were
presente thought to be in paradys. Thenne charles ful
of hool and very creaunce of fayth kneled doun to the
32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche
strongely prayed our lord that for the glorye of hys

He asks, instead,
for some relics of
Our Lord.

The Emperor gives him the sacred crown of thorns.

1 col, 2,

name presently wold^t renewe the myracles of hys holy passyon and gloryous resurrexyon.¹ & assone as he had prayed^t in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &

A delicious odour issues from the crown.

a meruayllous swete odour yssued^t out of the floures, ⁴ soo ry^t delycyous that eche man supposed^t that hys vestementes & clothynge had^t comen oute of heuen.

¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kuttyng wel purfyed^t to cutte the said crowne and^t in cuttyng^t 8 alwaye more & more the say^t crowne flourysshed^t and the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the

Charles deposits the thorns and flowers in a coffer,

² floures charles put a parte in a reposytorie, and in a

lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and^t wept 12 so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrew hys honde & supposed^t that the say^t Ebroin³ had^t holden them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16 myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete houre. And after whan he had^t gyuen in kepyng^t the say^t thornes to the say^t Ebroin he sawe the coffret in thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20

where they are turned into manna, and now are preserved at St. Denys.

them self, whiche sone after were conuerted^t in to manna and^t in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce. And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of

the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24

Thenne were there shewed^t myracles For al seek people that were there present were heled^t of al theyr maladyses by the odour of the floures aforesayd^t, and the peple that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolemente of presse 28 of peple cryed^t verytably that day was a day of helthe & resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous floures alle the cytee was purfyed and replenysshed of grace: for thre hondred^t & one seek man by compte 32 were heled^t & guarisshed of their maladyses. ⁴Emonge al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre monethes, whyche was blynde, deef, & dombe, but at

Three hundred and one sick persons are healed by the scent of the holy reliques.

One who had been blind, deaf, and dumb for over 24 years,

¹ Ed. resurrexyon. ² B vij. ³ Ed. Ebrom. ⁴ col. 2.

moment¹ whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne
he took hys syght, and whan it was layed² in ageyn he
recouuerd² his heeryng², And in florysshynge² of it he
4 was restored² to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
danyel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our
lord² in his passyon had² be perced² and in grete reuerence
was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of
8 it a chylde was heled², whiche of hys lyfte syde was
drye and² Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
to the chyrche and² cryed at the houre of none and said
that he beyng² in an extasye was heled² and² guarysshed²

and a child,
a cripple from
his birth,
are healed by
the relics.

12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the kyng² Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and² the holy sudarye, and² therwith the smocke of our lady & the clothe wherin our lord² was wrapped, and² also the arme

The Emperor
gives Charles a
piece of the cross,

16 of saynt Symeon ; and² al reuerently in precyous pyxes and² caasses he henge them aboue hys necke. and² in

and the holy
napkin and other
relics,

passyng² by a castel there was a chylde newe dede whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
20 bare & anone the chylde was reyseg² to lyf. And² whan he came to Acon in Almayne, ²whyche is a moche fayr cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche fayr & ryche and² a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of

with which he
performs numer-
ous miracles.

24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed². There atte laste were guarysshed² & heled blynde men and seek men of the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked², 28 lij of the fallyng sekenes, lxv of the gowte, many of them of the same place & many of other maladyes.

They are
deposited at Acon,
where they are
shown.

And it was ordeyned² that in the moneth of Iuyl at Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the 32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had² brought fro Iherusalem and² constantynoble. And² more ouer was establisshed² that one day of the weke of the fastyng² of ymble dayes and² in the moneth of Iuyl shold² be made

¹ Ed. meuyng.

² B vij, back.

this demo[n]straunce and notyfycacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'. 8

¶ ¹The fyrist partye of the second book conteyneth xvij chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called' mormyonde charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrist chapytre. 16

THaue spoken tofore in the fyrist book superfycially of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendyng¹ after my purpos vnto Kynge charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of 20 hys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behauyng I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyue by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it ute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrrour hystoryal" and in auncyent cronycles, And haue onelye translated them ute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maa² of thauncyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned. which book after somme ²and moost comunely is called "Fyera- 32 bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I shal make mencyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Speculum Historiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called 'Fiera-bras,'

quysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed &
 was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh
 of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche
 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssauce
 of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wher-
 fore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely
 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I shal
 conne, wthoute to adiouste ony thynge that I haue and have only
 reduced the
 ancient ryme into
 prose,
 not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I
 shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to
 12 thonour of Olyuer one partie, Not-wythstondyng that
 there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of
 eueriche of the barons pryncipal of themperour Charles
 whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xijij, and
 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of the xcer-
 cyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones,
 & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes without adding
 valyaunte capytaynes were more than xijij after that I
 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone
 of myllon ¹erle and of dame berthe propre syster of
 kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of Oliver,
 Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at the xcersyte
 24 of kyng charles: After hym Rychard of Normandye, Richard,
 Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys, Garin, Geoffrey,
 Hoel Erle of Nauntes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of Howel, Ogier,
 denmarke, Lamberd prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk Lambert,
 28 of bauyer, Thiery duc of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoys, Naymes,
 Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon Thiery, Basin,
 whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at
 rounceuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there Ganelon,
 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and Sampson,
 many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-
 wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym
 They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to

The Peers of
France, though
commonly said to
be 12 or 13,

were more than
that number.

They were
Roland,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,

Naymes,

Thiery, Basin,

Ganelon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris,
and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them
that I haue tofore named⁴ were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabas how he came to excyte thex-
cersy whole Charles : capitulo [j] 4

THe admiral of spayne named ballan, a paynym
muche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple,
had a sone ¹ named Fyerabas the moost meruay-
lous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8
the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his
strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was
kyng² of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of
babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord³ of roussye, 12
& of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iheru-
salem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu
Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred⁴ on a tyme in
to Rome where he dyd⁵ moche euyl & bare awaye the 16
holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other
relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende
recounte how they were recouerd⁶. And he was called
Fyerabas of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20
& bataylles were maa⁷ in Mormyonde bytwene the
paynyme and thexersy whole Charles Thys fyerabas
muche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to
fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24
came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furous
and eschauffed⁸ as he shold⁹ fyght al armed and wel
fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that
he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28
vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of them-
perour charles ²whyche were of the aygle shynynge,
And he sware by Mahommet his god¹⁰ & by his my¹¹
that he wold¹² neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32
made batayll to somme cristen man. And he seeyng

Fierabas, son of
Balan, was a
mighty giant. (50)

He was king of
Alexandria, (53)
Babylon, Russia,
and Jerusalem.
(66)

This Fierabas
rides furiously
up to the camp of
Charles, (76)

wishing to find
some Christian
to fight with him.

¹ B viij, back.

² col. 2.

that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye
voys : " O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,
sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of
4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as
Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoys ; &
swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse
vnto the nombre of vj or viij that they shal be receyued
8 of me. and yf thou make to me refuse of thys that I
of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyȝt
thou shalt of me be assayled & dyscomfyted & I shal
smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng ;
12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,
meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragyously & folyly as euyl
and olde thou hast enpryseð to come in to thys contreye
wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastely to departe." These
16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto
the shadewe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym
of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his
hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he
20 began to crye ¹ with an hye voys : " o charlemayn,
kyng¹ of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue
thys day so ofte called ? wythoute more lenger delaye
sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom
24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or
ogyer the danoys whom I haue herde preyseð. And yf
perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly
late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-
28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.
And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For
vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyaunteſt of thyn
excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to
32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for
be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I
be fugytyf for ony frenſſe man lyuyngh. I haue here
tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten

He challenges
Roland or
Oliver, (96)

or any six or
seven French
knights. (102)

He takes off his
arms and lies
down under a
tree, (90)

and repeats his
challenge with
threats.

He declares he has
already slain ten
kings in single
combat. (108)

kynges of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4
ca. ij

A ssone as fyerabras had fynysshed hys wordes the
Emperour Charles whyche ¹wel had herde hym
meruaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded 8
Rychard of Normandye what was that Turke that so had
cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys
person. For kyng Charles sayd: "I haue wel her-
ened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12
ayenst vj of the moost valyaunte of myn excersyte."
To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd: "Syr
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the
strengeſt borne of moder: And he is a sarasyn of so 16
grete fyerſte that he ne preyſeth kyng ne erle ne none
other persone of the world."

Richard tells
him. (120)

Charles swears
that one of his
knights shall
accept the
challenge, (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe
his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20
he shold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres
of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded
of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was
named. ¶ Rychard answerd: "syr Emperour, this 24
paynym nameth hym ſelf Fyerabras, which is moche to
redoubte and hath done moche harme to² cryſten men.
He hath ſlayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and
nonnes, and hath deſſuled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28
robbed & taken awaie the holy crowne of our lord and
many other reliques ³for whome ye take grete payne.
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete ſubjectyon And
the holy ſepulcre wherin god was buryed." Wherupon 32
Charles ansuerd: "of thys that thou haſt ſayd to me I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. or.

³ C j, back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn
 I shalle never haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accom-
 plisshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoed and troubled
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: " My dere neuewe, I praye
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will
 never rest till
 some one does
 so. (129)

Charles asks
 Roland to accept
 the challenge,
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was : capitulo iiiij

WHAN themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
 tosly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr
 16 vncle, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take
 ar-¹mes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynmys,
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole
 24 destractyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auante
 openlye that the olde and auncyent knyghtes whyche
 28 ye had brought wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And euer man
 knoweth wel how I was that euening assembled and
 32 wery of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my
 faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. ¶ And now it
 shal be knownen how the olde & auncyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles
 that he had
 sneered at him
 and his com-
 panions the pre-
 vious night. (148)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my compayne that euer shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland⁴

Charles in a rage
strikes him in
the face with his
gauntlet. (166)

had⁴ spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle hauyng moche Indignacion therat¹ smote hym thwarte the vysage wyth hys ryght gauntelet² that hys nose breste a blood⁴ habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland⁴ in a

Roland draws his
sword (168)
on his uncle.

8
grete fureye sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe hys blood⁴, and had⁴ smeton hys vncle yf he had⁴ not be lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles sawe thentencyon of Roulland⁴ he was meruayllously 12 abasshed⁴ & sayd⁴ : "O god⁴ of heuen, who wold haue thought that I shold⁴ haue had⁴ vylonye of Rolland⁴ my neuew whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst our aduersaryes ? And he cometh rennyng⁴ agenst me 16 wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my blood⁴ and lignage that here is present, And that more sonner shold⁴ socoure me than ony other ! ¶ Now I

20
beseeche God⁴ that on the crosse suffred⁴ passyon that this day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And⁴ this said

Charles orders
him to be
seized, (176)

in a grete furour he comaunded⁴ the frensshe men & sayd⁴ to them anone : "take ye hym, for I shall neuer ete tyl he be delyuerd⁴ to deth." Whan the frensshe 24 men vnderstood⁴ the commaundem[e]nt of Charles for to haue accomplysshed⁴ it that one loked⁴ vpon that other for to see who wold⁴ sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And whan Roulland⁴ sawe the fayt he withdrew hym a litel 28

a-parte³ wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng⁴ with an hyghe voys and sayeng⁴ to theym : "yf ye be wyse holde you styll, For I make a-vowe to god⁴ that yf ony of you moeue to come to me I shal make of hys heed⁴ two 32

but no one dares
to approach
him. (181)

partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate. and there

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and sayd to hym : "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vncle the emperour, whom 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hys Ire : "Syr Ogier, I promyse you for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete oultrace 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes
and settles the
quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been
repreued' by the auctour and' somewhat
12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

Vpon the debate of themperour and Rolland hys
neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to
¹the kyng¹ Charles, whyche haste be Instructe
16 syth thyn Infancye in alle scyences ful of maners digne
of commemoracyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of
the auncyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple.
why saydest thou on the euene that the auncyent and
20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them
better than the yonge knyghtes? And thou knewest wele
that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in
suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-
24 land thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the
bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest
to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng¹ whiche is not in
the puyssance of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys
28 at the word that sayth : "Vindictam differ donec per-
transeat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate
thy vengeaunce tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest
not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it
32 was wythout aduys of grete dyrescyon. thou smotest
hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's
reproof of Roland
and Charles.

Charles ought to
have remembered
the noble deeds of
Roland, and
his youth,

and should have
restrained his
anger, even
under pro-
vocation.

¹ C ij, back.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence. Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesyastes whyche sayth : “ Nichil agas in operibus iniurie : ” whan ¹a man re- 4 ceyueth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a persone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng^t is blamed^t, 8 of soo moche the more is he euyll contente and wrothe. For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was it of Rolland^t whyche thought more to haue be allowed^t & preysed^t for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12 that the Emperour sayd^t that tholde knyghtes had^t doon better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O Rolland^t, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh in the suche audacyte to speke ageynst thyn vncle 16 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes been worthy to be remembred^t? To hym whiche is emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord^t of so grete cremeur, and to thyn vncle as taken debate and ansuerd^t out- 20 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre hym, and he not the^t? yf he smote the wyth hys gauntlet by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy swerde to hym^t? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24 obeyssance of ysaac whyche he had^t to hys fader: thou were not aduyse^t of thys that thappostle saith : “ ye yonge men ²kepe your courage And put not the furour therof in exersite.” yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28 preysed^t thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd^t he not that thou haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is more auncyent than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym sayd^t to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent :

¹ col. 2.² C iij.

Roland ought to have remembered the respect he owed to his uncle,

according to the words of St. Paul :
'Rebuke not an elder, but entreat him as a father.'

wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And
gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst
4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was
hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys
neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce :
“Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of
my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Iniuryed my
person, To whome I had more affyance than to ony
man lyuyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne
12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further¹more I haue
noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym
that hath chalenged me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore
hym Naymes the Duc of bauyers whych sayd to the
16 kyng : “Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye
leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And
another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuer-
theles the kyng was in grete thought, For there was
20 none that wold goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente
the tydynge of the debate of charles and Rolland were
brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek
in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen
24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kynge
for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle
Olyuer, replenysshed wyth a noble courage and wyth
an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kynge, whan he had
28 herde these tydynge aroos oute of hys bedde and began
for to scratche an^t strayne hys armes and to fele yf it
were possyble to hym to bere armes.

And he thus dooyng his woundes began newly to
32 opene that the blood sprange oute of the dystresse.

¶ And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not
moche therby

Charles appeals to
his knights to
settle who shal
accept the chal-
lenge. (190)

Naymes tries to
cheer him. (195)

Oliver hears how
none can be found
to accept the
challenge. (206)

He calls for his
arms. (210)

His wounds break
out afresh.

For the grete loue and desyre ¹that he had to the kyng [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym ⁴ for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willyngly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- ⁸ ment no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and auauncement and renommee. And wylth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn-
guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensche man ¹² auaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wylth-
oute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme ¹⁶ hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys harnays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde ²⁰ he moche loued.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps him to arm, (234)

and brings him his horse. (210)

Oliver mounts, (241)

takes his arms,

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despayne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle sadled ²and ²⁴ brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the saddle wylthoutte settynge foot in the styrop, and sette hys shielde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after ²⁸ smote the hors wylth the sporres so harde that in the leepynge he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wylth a moche fyers countenaunce. And they that were presente by- ³² sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in hys kepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

¹ C iij, back.

² col. 2.

and his esquire remonstrates with him, (220) but in vain.

was born of moder or euer was in thy world, That is Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of 4 god^t the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng^t thus on horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his body he maad^t the sygne of the crosse in the name of Ihesus and^t commaunded^t hym self to the wylle of god^t, 8 whyche that day shold^t be to hym in conforte and^t ayde after hys good^t entencyon. And^t of euery man he was byseen and^t knownen that he had^t hys hert hole in hys body for to do gretefeat of armes: & so rode forth 12 vnto the lyces of ¹themerour Charles with whom was the Duc naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard^t de mondy- dyer, and^t Ogyer the danoys, wyth other barons of fraunce²: & emonge alle other there was Rolland^t moche 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had^t ayenst his vnkle the kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he had not wythsayed^t it tofore the kyng^t whan he was requyred^t. Thus Olyuer beyng^t seen tofore Charles was 20 moche alowed^t & preyseed^t of one and^t other & moche affectuously byholden. And the said^t olyuer put doun his helme and^t byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng^t, And^t reuerently came & salewed^t hym, and^t after sayd to hym: 24 “Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn- guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I 28 you suplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre.” To whom the kyng ansuerd^t: “Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good^t wylle. And^t 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte, borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng^t that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed to you.” “Syr kyng,” said ³Olyuer, “I am not comen

commends him-
self to God, (256).

and rides
to Charles's
tent. (257)

Roland regrets
his refusal of the
challenge. (260)

Oliver salutes
the king,

reminds him of
his long and
faithful services,
(268)

¹ C iij.

² Ed. Freunce.

³ col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (287)

Charles remonstrates with him. (292)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganelon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so 4
oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yefte to be quyte of them." whan the frensche men had herde Olyuer they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and sharpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make meneyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20
deynged in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is Iuged, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge & ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo ¹the bataylle." wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24
chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyll dysposycyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28
my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world shal not sau the but that thou shal dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32
kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly: "God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that

¹ C iiiij, back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold goo and
doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye
god of the fyrmamente gyue the grace to do wel & that
4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght
gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued
wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankyng hym ryght
humbly and takyng leue of al moche swetely.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader
reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the
geaunt, but for al that he went forth:
ca. vij

12 **W**HAN that Olyuer was lycenced for to goo do
hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner
of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
grete compassyon kneled doun at hys feet and sayd:
16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforde me
whan I see that my sone gooth to perdyeyon seeyng
the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded daungerously.
ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that
hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle."

24 But Reyner loste hys Payne, For the kyng had gyuen but in vain.
to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wytl-
stondyng these wordes doubted no thyng but that he
shold wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet

28 ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,
in thonour of hym that for vs deyed on the crosse
suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue
lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel

32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-
perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

and gives Oliver
his glove.

Reyner appeals to
Charles not to
allow Oliver to
fight,

Reyner again
protests and
appeals.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For in sygne of ly¹cence I haue gyuen hym my gloue, wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd

Oliver bids his
comrades fare-
well.

wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, 4 and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name of god^l ye pardon me." whan the frenssh men herde 8 hym so speke There was none but that he wepte tenderly, and soo takyng^l hys leue wyth his standard^l reyse^l The kyng^l blessyd hym in makynge the sygne of the crosse, And^l wepyng comaunded hym in the kepyng 12 of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghoost.

Charles gives him
his blessing.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche
sette noo thyng^l by hym, with other dis-
putacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to
Fierabras, (344)

Olyuer departed^l & rode forth on hys waye & taryed not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which was al vnarmyd^l and^l laye in the shadewe. and whan Olyuer had^l aresonne^l hym The paynym torned 20 his heed ayenst hym and^l dayned^l vnnethe to loke on hym. For he setted^l nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And^l thenne Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, ²thou hast 24 thys day so ofte called^l vs that I am come hyther. And^l I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras answerd^l to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28 world^l borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named^l: I am he that thou knowe that dyd^l doo destroye rome your cyte, & slewe the Pope and^l many other and bare awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye 32 take grete Payne and^l laboure to recouer them. And^l

and demands his
name. (351)

Fierabras tells
him, and boasts
of his exploits.
(362)

furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulcre in whych your god^t rested." Olyuer ansuerd : "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche 4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng^t make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the

Oliver bids him
arm himself.
(384)

8 frensshe men that doo no thynge but byholde vs? wherfore depesshe the, or¹ by the god on whome I byleue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyest." whan Fyerbras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to 12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so hastily, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens tyll ²I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage.

16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalst see me arm'd." Olyuer ansuerd to hym : " O paynem, know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalst knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the

Fierabras asks his
name and rank.
(388)

20 Emperour, my redoubte^d lord, that for the conservacion³ of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue the creaunce of thy god^t Mahoun, & of other ydolles, whyche ben but abusyon and decepcyon : whych haue

Oliver calls on
Fierabras to
renounce Maho-
met, (395)

24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good^t vnder-
standingyng . wherfore that thou enclyne the to consente
and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in god^t almyghty
the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy

and repeats the
articles of the
Christian faith.
(398)

28 ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wylle :
whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there
in dwelleth : whyche for our saluacion wold be borne
of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalst haue this
32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of batpesme, which is
vpon this establisshed, thou mayst come to the glorye
eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

¹ Ed. For.

² C v, back.

³ Ed. consecracion.

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe ute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must ¹ come and fygght ayenst ⁴ me. For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fygght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on ⁸ fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charlemayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyset ¹² and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoys and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: ¹⁶ "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles the mperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys cunceyl, & of hys ²⁰ maners, as of hys puyssance and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- ²⁴ auntemen. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou ² auaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys ²⁸ heed and sayd: "By my god mahommet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyshonour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pleyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, ³² For certeyn I haue entencyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (402)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douze-pères. (408)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (425)

shelde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage."

Fierabras asks
Oliver his name.
(441)

Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am

Oliver tells him
he is Garin, a poor
knight. (443)

4 borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche

came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned

for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the.

8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the &

take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou

be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not con-

sentte to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn,

I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland

ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete

renom mee ¹ as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuert:

Fierabras asks
him why Ogier or
Oliver has not
come to meet
him. (454)

16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for

they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come,

but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde

to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the

20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt

Petre the apostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the

not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I

holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I

Oliver says it is
because they
despise him. (457)

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I

Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of

grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to

say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me

28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but

for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whiche is moche

noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle

doun to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde

Fierabras says he
never fights ex-
cept with a king
or a noble. (465)

32 and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that

thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the

I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme

to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

but offers to give
up his horse and
shield to Oliver.
(470)

not hane pacyence but that he say^d to hym : "Thy fayt lyeth in noo thyng^e but in wordes full of ¹folyshe presumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euensonge tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. 4

Oliver threatens him. (484)

I am none hare ne wylde beest for to be aferde, And thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there is a tyme of spekyng^d and tyme of beyng^d styll, And of one and^d that other one may be reputed^d a fool. Now 8 come of & depesshe the of that I haue say^d the or ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : "I desyre ne praye the of no thyng^e but that thou sende to me

Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12 rounde table. And^d yf one of them be not hardy for to come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they shal not be refused." In makyng^d these desputacyons

He sees the blood run from Oliver's wound, (497)

Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16 opened^d by force of rydyng^d and^d of chauffyng^d & bledde sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne doun by is knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that

and asks if he is wounded? Oliver says, "No."

blood^d that soo renneth doun to therthe : "I trowe thou 20 be hurte." Olyuer say^d : "I am not hurte but my hors is harde atte spore whero he is blody." Fyerabras behelde & sawe it was not of the hors and^d answerd :

"Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24 in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood^d that cometh

Fierabras offers to cure him with the holy balm, (510)

²doun by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the : there been two flagons hangyng^d on the saddle of my hors

whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered^d in 28 Iherusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god^d was enbawmed wylth whan he was taken doun fro the

crosse and^d layed^d in hys graue. hye the, and^d goo drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32 thou shalte be hole and thenne thou shalt mowe defende

but Oliver refuses.

the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer ansuerd that he wold^d not & that he say^d was folye. Thenne

¹ C vj, back.

² col. 2.

fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason,
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'
4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name:
ca. ix

8 **W**HAN fyerabras had long abyden lyeng¹ wyth-
oute arysyng² for Olyuer he satte vp and
after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-
oute hydyng³ of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer
that been soo moche redoubted⁴ of paynems, & of what
12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchynge
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than ¹I am, but of
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world
but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a
thyng wherof I am moche abasshed. For yf they
were suche foure as thou tellest to me I wold not refuse
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue
pacyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy
to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyng owne persone,² By mahoun
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng³ ne
alle thy goddes³ shal not redeme the but that thou shalst
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore
32 the on my feet thou shalst be moche corageous yf thou
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks
him to describe
Roland and
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he
would not be
afraid of four
such. (536)

¹ C vij.

² Ed. personr.

³ Ed. goodes.

Oliver at last
induces Fierabras
to rise. (546)

He is 15 feet
high.

He bids Oliver go
back and send
Roland, or Ogier,
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks
Oliver to help him
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a
noble example of
chivalry and
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd: “thou hast vaunted the ouerlonge to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by ouer ¹moche spekyng otherwyse than trouthe may 4 bryngē the soone to myschyef.” Herof was fyerabras stronglye despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in 8 Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his value. And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym, and sayd to Olyuer: “In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12 thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer, or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressly say to Olyuer 16 that I shall not passe thys auauntgarde tyl I haue conquerd hym.” Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20 must nedes fygth Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer demaunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd: “helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24 neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man lyuynge.” And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his diligence ²to arme hym, and he took fyrist lether of arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28 his habergeon of stele wele bouched & polysshed: & after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32 was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dysarmed he had slayne hym wythoute grete Payne yf he 8 had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded to arme hym that shold fyȝt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creaunce contrarie! I suppose that

Would that there were such between all Christian men!

12 god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse. But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras was wel armed he than¹ked moche Olyuer, And after

Fierabras takes his three swords,

16 gyrde hys swerde named plourance.² and in the arson of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none

made by one of three brothers,

20 harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I haue founden by wrytyng! ¶ On a tyme there were

24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that one was named Galaus, that other Munyfycans, & the thyrd was called Agnisiax. These iij brethern made

ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiax the thyrd

28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, & also

plourance,² and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyfycans, that other

by another of whom Durendal and Cortan were made,

32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called

sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the danoys had. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. plousance.

and by the third
Joyous and
Floberge.

Fierabras takes
with him the two
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of
his horse.

Fierabras wishes
Oliver to retire.
(556)

Oliver refuses.
(565)

Fierabras con-
fines Oliver on his
faith and loyalty
to reveal his true
name. (637)

the swerd that was named Floberge, another called haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charlemayn had for a grete specyalte. and these ¹ijj brethern aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4 And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8 And in the myddle of the same sheld^e was paynted hys god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12 to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, & pommellyd, whyche had a specyal condycyon : For whan his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16 sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsb^ck Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer : "O garyn, gracyous and curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20 thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage." Olyuer answerde : "alwaye thou spekest of grete folye for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24 membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make aferde : for ²by the helpe of the blesseyd Ihesus thys day shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the emperour." Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28 was meruayllously abasshed of thys man that wold not lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym : "Thou art a crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32 you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles
themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of
fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght
4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,
Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche
wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely
myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherfore knowe thou
8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, Oliver tells him,
(650)
the moost especyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the
twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye
thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest
12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not
make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,
sir Oliuer, ¹are ye hurte in the body ? it shold be grete
dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye
16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold
be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue
don for this tyme : For alle the golde in the world I
wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."

20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by
my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no
courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you
wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer
24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:
"O paynym, or we procede ony ferther now I admonest
the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche
hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng' owen
28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh
not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake
Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepcyon, &
dyspose the to be baptysed, & thou shalt haue to thy
32 frende the grete charles and a specyall felowe of Rolland
the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my
lyf I shal neuer forsake thy compayne." fyerabras
ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

wnereupon Fiera-
bras presses to
retire on account
of his wound.

Oliver again begs
Fierabras to be-
come Christian.

¹ C viij, back.

The Saracen
refuses.

For for no thyng I shalle not byleue in your god ne
shal ¹forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day
yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so des-
playsaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4
the."

¶ How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyȝt, &
of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of
other maters: capitulo

x 8

Fierabras offers
Oliver some of
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.
(602)

The French pray
for Oliver's
success,

and especially
Charles.

At the first onset
their spears are
broken,

F Yerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it
was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors
renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd: "my frende, I
praye the þat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12
verteue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou
shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst
me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke
thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16
harnoys fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete theyr
horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter-
aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other
the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20
fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And
emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd: "O blesseyd
Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte
of Olyuer my ²baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24
ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after feruently came
in to hys chapel hydyng his vysage wyth hys mantel
and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucyfyx
wyth grete teeres, sayeng: "My lord god, of whome I 28
see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe
Olyuer, whyche for the xaltaeyon of the crysten fayth
is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles
fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32
sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force
bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

¹ col. 2.

² D j.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonné that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce

and both are stunned.

8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruayllously shynyng & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it

Oliver cuts off a part of Fierabras' helmet, (616)

12 was ennoblede and garnysshed made to flee to the grounde ; and with ¹the same stroke in descendyng he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore

16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styropes and almoost was ouerthrownen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys : “ A ! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen² to thys paynym ! ” “ ye,”

and nearly un-horses him.

20 sayd rolland, “ meruayllously he smote hym ! ¶ Now wold god of heuen,” sayd Rolland, “ that I were now vnder the shelde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende.”

24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd : “ Ha ! euyl gloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of

28 me reproched.” vpon whych thynge rolland ansuerd no thynge but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course

Fierabras strikes Oliver on the helmet,

32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke³ vpon his helme so sharplly that he trenched moo than vc maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

and wounds his horse. (591)

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. gynen.

³ Ed. stoke.

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras ¹ was al blody : of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4 hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ “O lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8 pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of thys paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue hym :” and made vpon hym self the sygne of the crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : “Olyuer, by 12 Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde : now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16 þe stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuertheles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20 be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my strengthe : for I warne the of one thynge that whan I see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24 charles loueth ² the not moche whan he sendeth the to me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte shetes thou haddest been moche better.” whan Olyuer herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28 courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : “O Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god almyghty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32 I deffye the ! we haue ouer long pleted.” vpon these wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

Oliver calls on
God and the
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again
offers to let him
go,

on account of his
wound,

but Oliver defies
him. (597)

¹ D j, back.

² col. 2.

naylles, and^t crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and floures been hewen, broken, and floweren to the grounde. the fyre yssued^t oute largely, makyng^t grete bruyt with 4 the swerdes vpon their harnoys. In this whyle Charles was in grete medytacyon and^t thought that the quarele of Olyuer was trewe and^t Iuste and^t that god ought to preserue hym, and^t whan he thought that Olyuer myght 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd^t: ¶ “O gloryous god^t, for whome we take Payne, I praye the to conserue oliuer that he be not slain ne taken. For I swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slain 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chirche shal^t 1 clerke ne preest be reuested^t ne enhabyted^t, but I shal do brenne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & crucy- fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd^t Duc Naymes, “Syr kyng, leue 16 these wordes vayne and^t ydle, & praye god^t for Olyuer that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys whyle perseuerd^t the ij champyons fyghtyng and smy- yng^t eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made hym falle on hys vysage, and^t hys hors had^t be slain yf he had not lepte a syde. and^t Olyuer was hurte in hys body and^t specyally in the breste and^t had^t thenne loste 24 soo moche of hys blood^t that he was moche feble, whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted^t ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of moder.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god^t whan he felte hym hurte: capitulo xj

32 O Lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of the grete woundes that he had^t in hys body took his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory- ous god^t, cause & begynnyng^t of al that is aboue & vnder the fyrmamente, which for your owne playser fourmed

Their armour is cut to pieces.

Charles prays for Oliver's success,

and vows if he is killed every church shall be burnt.

Naymes reproves him.

Oliver is very weak from loss of blood.

¹ D ij.

Oliver offers up a prayer,

our fyrist fader Adam and for ¹hys compayne gauest vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is conceyued, gyuyng^t to them lycence to ete al maner fruytes reserued onely one, of whyche Eue by the 4

recounting the
fall of Adam,

moeuyng of the serpent caused Adam to ete, wherfore they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of helle many haue ben deceyued & dampned: wherof ye had^t pyte of the perdycyon of the world^t and came for 8 to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the gloriouys vyrgyn marye by thannuncyacion of the holy Aungel Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased^t you. And anone

the annunciation,

after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12 saunce and^t wyth golde, encence, and myrre made to you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be

the slaughter of
the Innocents,

slayne many chyldren, whiche now been in Ioye per- manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter- 16 myned^t ye went in the world^t prechyg^t to your frendes.

the Crucifixion,

Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde; & 20 whan he byleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your precious blode he recouerd his sy^t fayre & clere & cryed you mercy wherby he was sauad. After by your frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture: ²the thyr^t 24

the Resurrection,

day after aroos and^t took ageyn lyf and^t descended^t in to helle, And^t took out Adam and^t Eue and al them that were worthy to haue paradys. And^t the day of your meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended^t in to heuen in the 28 presence of al your apostles. Thus my god^t, my maker, as thys is trouthe and^t I byleue it verayly and^t fermly, be ye in my conforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I may vaynquysshe hym in suche wyse that he may be 32 sauad." And^t this said he blessyd^t hym with his swerde in makynge the sygne of þ^e crosse in the name of god^t the holy trynyte, and^t smote his hors vpon the hope of

He crosses him-
self.

the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng:

“Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not
fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my
4 god termagaunt I wold^d gladly here it.” “Now wold
god of heuen,” sayd Olyuer, “that thou were in suche
grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo,
For I assure the I shold^d loue the thenne as moche as I
8 doo Roulland.”

Fierabras laughs
at him,
and asks what his
prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: “by my god
Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche
grete folye?”

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd’
the bawme & ¹ dranke therof at hys ease,
and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors
was slain: capitulo xij

16 Fyerabras beyng^d wroth of the wordes of oluer in
grete ire sayd to hym: “kepe the wel fro me, for
I deffye the!” “I am redy,” sayd Olyuer, “for
to god I commaunde me.” & so thenne they recounted^d
20 to gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that
the fyre myȝt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of
theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed^d vnder hem and
the erthe trembled^d of the bruyt in the medowe vnder
24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde
and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl herte in the
breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen
torned^d in hys heed^d. And had^d hys face alle chaunged^d.

The struggle is
renewed (602) so
fiercely that the
ground shakes.
(607)

28 And thenne ageyn he cryed^d on god and on the virgyn
marie that he wold sauе his soule. Fyerabras by grete
curtosye sayd to hym: “Olyuer, vnderstonde me,
descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and
32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-
ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

Fierabras wounds
Oliver in the
breast.

Fierabras again
offers Oliver some
of the holy balm,

defende the ageynst me and thou shalte recoure newe
 but Oliver refuses it. strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude
 do though ¹he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe
 fightyng he wold haue it. And anone came that one ⁴
 ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that
 Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde
 entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the
 blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And ⁸
 whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme
 and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-
 ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys
 paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made ¹²
 to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue
 that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche
 emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan
 Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme ¹⁶
 so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym
 and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the
 stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by
 whyche the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the ²⁰
 hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a
 lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or
 the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and
 took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, ²⁴
 & anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,
 & thought that ²yf by aduenture fyerabras were more
 hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles
 that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. ²⁸
 wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the
 barylles & threwe them therin whyche were anone
 sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt
 Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water ³²
 euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barielles were
 loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &
 by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

Oliver pierces
Fierabras' thigh.

He drinks some
of the balm,
and is at once
made whole again.

Oliver cuts the
cord by which the
vessels are tied.

He seizes one,
drinks some of
the balm,
and is healed of
his wound.

Oliver throws the
vessels into the
river.

¹ D iij.

² col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were more worth than al the golde in the world: but I promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben 4 dere solde, For I shal not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy heed:” and thys sayeng^t he came ayenst hym, but rushes at him, Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the 8 defence wyth his shelde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer- theles Fyerabas smote hym so hard þat hys helme was and breaks his helmet, desmaylled & broken, but he was not hurte, & the stroke descended so inpytuously þat he cutte asondre the 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and thenne and kills his horse. (588) was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the hors of fyerabas that maad no semblaunte ¹to renne vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd 16 byfore, but helde hym styllle aboue hys propre custome.

¶ How Fyerabas and' Olyuer foughten to-
gyder afote merveyllously, and' of the
prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer:
20 capitulo viij

Moche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they The French wish to help Oliver,
sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not but Charles forbids them.
24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.
¶ And thenne kyng Charles kneled down to therthe & maaþ his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful & came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabas, and sayd to hym: “o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the foulle this day ageynst me. In the mornynge thou hast 32 so moche preyed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and

Oliver reproaches the Saracen for killing his horse. (598)

¹ D iij, back.

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therbytage."

Fierabras declares it was accidental,
and offers to give him his own horse,
but Oliver refuses.

Fyerabras ansuerd: "I knowe wel that thou ¹sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende doun of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomelk: And I promyse the thou shal be well horsed. And I knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abasshed as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede."

Fierabras jumps off his horse,

and they fight on foot.

Reyner appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Olyuer ansuerd: "I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and I lusty wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruaylously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoun of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynueng the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto ²other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym nyghe to me in helthe." ¶ Incontynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be ouercome and that my ryght at

thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make auowe that al
crystante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in
Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &
4 after kneled doun with bothe his knees¹ to the grounde
& prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for
our sauacyon was borne of the gloryous vrygyn marie
in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious
8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys
world ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnnyng²
Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in
paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there
12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one
onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed
you to ordyne: of ³whiche adam ete & was dysobey-
saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for
16 to redeme hym fro eternal captuyte & vs also ye were
contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after
that the traytour³ Iudas sold you for xxx pens: & on
a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortally
20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of
thornes: and after Longyus smote you in the ryght
syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he
had leyed on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe
24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke
out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore
al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for
your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thappostle in erthe; and
28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to
make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle
thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys
day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to
32 preserue hym that he be not slain ne vaynquysshed."

¶ He thys sayeng¹ & other deuoute wordes in hys
secrete oratorye Our⁴ lord sente to hym an aungel fro
heuen whyche sayd to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour
An angel appears

Charles at first
threatens to de-
stroy every church
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays
for Oliver's suc-
cess,

recounting the
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of
our Lord's side
by Longius,

the descent into
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination
of Baptism.

¹ Ed. kuees. ² col. 2. ³ Ed. traycour. ⁴ Ed. Out.

and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot

through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from ¹god for to say to the that thou doubtē no thyngē of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wynne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquysshe the paynym." ⁴ thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys gloryous medytacyon. Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerasbras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyllyng¹ to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng¹ deuaunced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng ¹² angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryȝt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in ¹⁶ whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the Payne that he had¹ of smytyng¹, and he desyryng¹ to smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys cuerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moeued ²⁰ and abasshed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And layed¹ hys shielde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstondyng the paynym smote ²hym twytes so ²⁴ myghtyly that he brake hys shielde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed¹ for that tyme And doubted¹ soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde: and moche sodeynlye the frensshe ²⁸ men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed¹ of his swerde armed¹ them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold¹ not consente that any man shold¹ goo sayeng to them that ³² god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand¹ men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed¹

¹ D iiiij, back.

² col. 2.

hym. and notwythstondyng¹ al thys the paynym dy²
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I Fierabras mocks
at Oliver,
 haue opteyned³ vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now
 wel that thou art ynoch⁴ vaynquysshed sythe that thou
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the
 tresour of the world⁵. and I am wel contente for t.
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued⁶ &
 the god⁷ in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god⁸
 12 ful of bounte, & ¹I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my suster to wyf to and offers, if he
will renounce
Christianity, to
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed⁹. Hyr name is
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And¹⁰ of one of the
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd¹¹ to
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for
 god¹² forbede that euer I shold¹³ be of entencion to forsake
 20 my god¹⁴, whyche hath created & fourned¹⁵ me, and his
 holy sacraments which haue been establysshed for my¹⁶
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes-
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd¹⁷ to
 hym, "by mahoun my god¹⁸, thou art alwaye moche
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete
 28 thou¹⁹ mayst wel auaunte the. For neuer was I of
 persone so traualled ne greued²⁰ as I am of the. ¶ Thou
 oughtest wel to be praysed. I am contente that thou Oliver says, "God
forbid!"
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withouto com-
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a
 woman." Olyuer answerd²¹: "Paynym, I can not say
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and²²
 bounte, but for the ⁴valewe of x thousand²³ marke of
Fierabras declares
he never met any
one so obstinate.

¹ D v. ² Ed. fo rmy. ³ Ed. thon. ⁴ col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytye & frendshyp & thenne 4 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wylle of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wynne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thynge shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, " thou art moche surquydrous & gloryous, wherfore be thou sure that shortly thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he
will win it back
in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed' by Olyuer after that he had' recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabras: capitulo viiiij 16

Fierabras comes
against Oliver,

who, looking
round in fear,

sees the Saracen's
horse, on which
are two swords.

He runs and seizes
one, Baptism,

WHAN Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle. For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20 dysmesurably came ageynst hym and ¹helde in hys hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no meruayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24 was broken in two partyes. but as it playsed to god he loked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28 quyckely and took one of the swerdes whych was named baptesme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32 he was nyghe hym he began to say: "O kyng of

¹ D v, back.

Alexandrye, now is tyme to comptē. For I am pour-
ueyd of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you."

and defies
Fierabras.

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so
speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: "O
baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony
8 mans that is lyuyng." And after behelde olyuer sayeng:

"By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne
swerde and late me ¹haue myn and thenne late vs fyght
12 as we haue begonne." "by my hede," sayd Olyuer,

"that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make
ony pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys swerde
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long
16 haue we sermoned." Thys sayeng & other thynge
Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote
hym fyrst, but he myȝt not attayne hym on the hede
but that he recountred first the shelde of the paynym,

20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half
flewē in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that
stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne

24 olyuer blesyd hym that had forged that swerde and so
wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they
were in partie descouerd of theyr helmes. And whan

Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers

28 and courageous he sayd: "O lord god of heuen, maker
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful
of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in
his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I

32 shold be hys pruye felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie
moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone
²that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

who asks him to
give up Baptism,
and take his own
sword in ex-
change,

but Oliver refuses,

and with a blow
breaks the shield
of the Saracen.

They both lose
their helmets.

Oliver is astonish-
ed at the appear-
ance of Fierabras,
and prays for his
conversion.

enhaunced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere: "Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wylt fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4 ranne vpon hym: and Olyuer was smyton fyrist vpon his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8 put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.

¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þ^e stroke come threwe 12 hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred, and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al troubled of the Payne and the fyre was seen sprynge oute of the swerde and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16 and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere: "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20 comen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd: "Ihesus is wel myghty ¹for to shewe hys puyssance. But anone thou shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalte be 24 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al that the swerde araulte it share and passed thorugh, & 28 thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god that I haue wel araulte the and smyton. Neuer shal charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer ansuerd: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I haue alwaye desyred!" And therupon eche smote

Fierabras smites
Oliver on his
shield,
and breaks it in
pieces.

Oliver cuts the
Saracen on his
shield,

and nearly stuns
him.

They abuse each
other. (701)

Fierabras wounds
Oliver (732) and

declares his time
has now come.

other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe
swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote
olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came
4 to the flessh, and yf god had not wrought he had be
slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged
came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe
hys shidle so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme
8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse
& took good hede and came lyghtly & smote ¹fyerabras
in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse
that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel
12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled
of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche
manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his
bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his
16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe
foughten.

Oliver aims a
blow at Fierabras;
who, raising his
shield too high,
leaves his side
uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his
sword in between
the ribs,

so that the Saracen's bowels al-
most fall out. (748)

¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-
leued' in god', and' how he was borne by
20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylded'
of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

A fter that the Paynym was smyton and hurte
mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he
24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the
vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he
had knowleche of the error of the paynynms and lyfte
vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy
28 trynyte and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after
loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer
& valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou
byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy
32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed &
yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding
himself vanquish-
ed begs for mercy,

(753) promising
to become a
christian,
and to be bap-
tised, (755)

¹ D vj, back.

² col. 2.

and to give up the
sacred reliques. (763)

Oliver takes pity
on him, (770)

and binds up his
wounds. (774)

Fierabras asks to
be carried away,
(776)

and bids him fetch
his horse, (788)

and take him on
it.

He warns him of
an ambush of
50,000 Saracens in
the wood close by.
(796)

Oliver lifts him on
to the horse. (809)

whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal byleue in the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche Payne. And I swere to the that yf by thy defaute I dye sarasyn 4 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood. Thou shalst see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8 moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadewe vnder a tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12 paynym prayed hym that it myght plese hym to bere hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende, for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20 theron and come as nyghe to ¹me as thou may and yf I may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and 24 depesshe the, For thys day in the mornynge I lefte in the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them that none shold moeue tyl I were retorne d fro the 28 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al afraied and abasshed for fere, but not wythstondyng he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plese you I am contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32 & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble ; after hym maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand

The Saracens
break out of the
ambush. (812)

4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote the hors wyth the spores but the chafge was so heuy that he myȝt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come

Oliver spurs his
horse, but in vain.

8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them. And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon¹dydyer, Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy,

Roland and others
rush out to his
help.

12 Basyn, the duc Thery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not. Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors

16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge the other, For it semed as it had be thonder and tempeste ; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a grete hecd of stèle square and sharpe whyche was alle 20 enuenymed wyth the blood of a crapauld and was ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al amoeued and abasshed and sayd to Fyerabras in thy manere : " Sir kyng, ye must needs descende ; I may

Oliver being hard
pressed,
tells Fierabras he
must set him on
the ground.

24 no ferther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes be oppressyd ; ye see it wel. And yf they may attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforde."

Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys :² " O noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me ? Ye haue conquerd me, to you I am yeuen and ydden. it shal not be

Fierabras begs
him not to leave
him.

32 reputed noblesse determyned whan ³I am youres and ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me ? Virgyn marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. veys.

³ D vij, back.

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou oughtest lytel to be preyed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4 erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel trusste 8 thereto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the sarasyn and wytch suche as he myȝt haue he armed hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an hatte of fyne stèle, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12 haultclere, wytch whiche he coude wel helpe hym. & herupon came anone brullant wytch his faus darte & atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke so that the dart brake. thenne said fyerabras: "Syr 16 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte. late me descende doun and laye me a-parte out of the waye to thende that I be not defoullid of these sara- syns, ne taken and destroyed." Theroft had Olyuer 20 1grete compassyon & layed Fyerabras in the shadowe of a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24 knowest myn entencyon. I requyre the to gyue me grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme that for thexaltacion of thy fayth I may be wytch Rol- land my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28 haultclere and came in to the waye, & the first that he recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefte hym to the breste and [he] fyl doun dede. & Olyuer was abylded 32 & delyuered, and took fro hym hys shielde whyche was al newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys, & also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

Oliver promises
not to desert him,

and arms himself
in Fierabras'
armour. (868)

Braillant charges
at and wounds
him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras
down (825), and
tries to escape,

but seeing it is in
vain,
utters a prayer,

draws his sword,
and turns to meet
the Saracens. (833)

the myscreautes. And atteyned at the fyrist stroke
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornyng
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys
 to-gydre : “ by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou
 8 shalt not escape vs ; kepe the wel ¹for by vs thou shalt
 deye ! ” And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sariesyns smote on
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of² shiotte
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he
 16 had gotten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle
 hys conforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome
 he caught fyl doun and was slayn. It is not redde in
 ony book that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteously,
 ly, & myght not be socoured' by the
 Frensshe men : ca. xvj³

24 O Lyuer was a[l] alone on fote emonge the sarasyns
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-
 uaylous : but it is not a thynge possyble that he
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyt glaues, with
 28 swerdes and with faus darteres of yron they pressyd hym
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in ⁴moo than xxx
 places : & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyt
 foure sharpe darteres they perced and wounded hym in
 32 his body meruailously. Wherfore by veray force &
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

He slays Clargys,
 and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain
 under him. (891)

He defends him-
 self bravely.

His shield is
 broken, (896)
 his coat of mail
 cut to pieces.

He is overpow-
 ered, bound, &
 blindfolded. (906)

¹ D viij. ² Ed. and. ³ Ed. xvij. ⁴ col. 2.

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al conforte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas-

He cries on
Charles for help,
(912)

8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembrest not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe. am I deef or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes makyng the kyng

and on Roland.
(913)

Maradas mocks
him. (914)

Maradas sayd to hym: "Frenshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes¹ straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in 20

Roland and the
other douzeperes
charge the Sarac-
ens: (932)

especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to sauе Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amanc dys; Guy of bourgoyn atteyned brullant.

each kills a Saracen. (945)

There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empesshed to holde them to gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynynms that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moyen people & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

Guyllam, Gual-
tier, and others
are slain (968).
and

¹ D viij, back.

dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn
they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode aweye
wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus
4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyt an
hyghe voys cryed: "sau, kepe, and socoure the barons.
O knyȝtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede
awaye the barons ¹neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the
8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged
smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente doun
of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde
hys swerde durandall drawen for tauenge hym fyersly,
12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the
deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde
awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he
clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude
of the paynmys he myght not passe forth for to socoure
the barons prysnners and chaced them more than
v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery.
And not wythastondyng Rolland sware that he wold
neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro
the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. till night came
The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at
theyr playssyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what
he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynmys
28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And
therfore by force they must leue the felde in ryȝt grete
²dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they retorneck. when they were
compelled to turn
back. (1020)

The second' partie of the second' book con-
32 teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the
tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how
they that were taken spaken to ballant
thadmyral of spayne.

¶ How Fyerabas was founden by Charles,
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his
wonde :· ca. primo

On his way back
to the camp
Charles finds
Fierabras lying
under a tree.
(1037)
He reproaches
him.

Fierabras begs for
mercy, (1042).

promises to be-
come Christian,
(1046)

and to give up the
holy reliques. (1056)

Charles has pity
on him and causes
him to be carried
to the camp.
(1067)

A fter that charles knew that he myght not haue 4
ageyn Olyuer ne the other pryoners it was force to
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was
thenne to them greuous ; & also in retornyng they
fonde fyerabas vnder a tre languysshing, to whom þ^e 8
kyng said : O vnhappy paynym, I ouȝt wel to hate the
for by the been my men pryonners and loste. thou hast
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabas
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16
In thonour of ¹god I crye the mercy & pardone me.
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of
my woundes I shal enhaunce to my power the crysten
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten ; and by 24
my moyan the holy sepulcre & the holy reliques shal
be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete Payne and
trauaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in
whom I now byleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28
Olyuer that noble knyȝt whiche is taken pryonner
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be
borne in to hys lodgynge by his barons. and whan they

saw hym so hugely membro^d they al were abasshed of his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed he was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And

4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour ¹ to Olyuer that had foughтен & ouercomen suche a man ; and as he was vnclothed partye of hys woundes opened and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl doun

8 a-swoune, & rolland anone lyfte hym vp. And in al haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]cheysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous of this that the paynym shold be crystend. & after that

12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he was called Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes

16 he was a saynt and god shewed for hym myracles, and is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes & surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and

20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng. In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was

24 present & sayd to fyerabras : "yf now olyuer & the other barons were here present tofore the we shold wel be contente." And charles was thenne al pencyf and heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys ba²rons prysioners, but

28 he maad no more semblaunte.

All the French
admire his size
and figure. (1076)

He is baptised
and named
Floren. (1087)

After his death he
became a Saint.

Charles orders his
own physicians
to attend to him.
(1092)

They assure him
that Fierabras
will be well in
2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyuer & his felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in prysion : capitulo ij

32 **T**He Saracens after they had the barons of fraunce tofore named for prysioners they taryed not but ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named

The Saracens
carry Oliver
and the other
prisoners to
Algremore. (1114)

¹ E j, back.

² col. 2.

Agrymore ; and at the entre of the say^t cyte they sowned^t and blewe vp trumpes makyng^t grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them & fonde there brullant of mommyer, 4 to whome he say^t : “ O brullant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted^t, & his peres of fraunce be they 8 dyscomfyted^t?” Brullant say^t to hym : “ O syradmyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almoost defeated^t and dyscomfyted. For 12 of hys puyssance it is a meruayllous thynge. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vaynquysshed^t by one of his barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vaynquysshed^t & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doyng 16 ony treson.” ¹ whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And^t or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had^t of hys sone. and^t whan he was releued he cryed^t wyth an 20 hye voys : “ O dolaunt vnhappy that I am ! ha ! poure caytyf ! what shal bycome of me ? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone ? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas^t wherfore were thou 24 taken whyche neuer in bataylle were very ne had reproche ? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the ! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth : I had moche leuer that he were dysmembred^t and put to 28 deth : ” & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl doun to the grounde and cryed^t : “ O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and^t of my neuewe bruchart^t ? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and^t captayn 32 of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute the brayne of Mahommet the god^t whiche hath promysed^t to me so moche good^t, to whome I haue gyuen my self and^t yolden.” Thus sayeng^t alle in a rage he tormented^t

Balan enquires what tidings they bring. (1129)

Bruillant tells him of their defeat, (1129)

and of Oliver's victory over Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments over his son. (1134)

and threatens to smash his gods.

hym self greuously vpon the grounde.¹ And whan thadmyral was a lytel coled^t of hys grete yre He de-
maunded^t of Brullant: "whiche is the kny^tt that hath
4 vaynquys² shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd^t:
"Syr admirall, your sone hath be conquerd^t by yonde
knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel
formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen
8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye
you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be
dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that
he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr
12 confort, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche
vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them
sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not
what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe
16 our necessite, yf thadmyral my^tt know that we be of
the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,
for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal
deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as
20 I shal begynne :" to whome alle the other frensshe mer-
prysonners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he
counceyld them. after that thadmyral had comanded
them to come tofore hym the paynyns vnarmed them
24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,
wherof they were moche greued^t & daungerously hurt:
& anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "þou
frenssh man, beware that þou ³lye not but say to me the
28 trouthe how thou arte named^t & hyde it not." Olyuer
ansuerd^t & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto
a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne &
cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,
32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:
& also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure
knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterpryse^t Payne to
serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruycce we my^tt
be auauanced & haue somme good^t guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires
which of the
French knights
overcame Fiera-
bras. (1144)

Bruillant points
out Oliver. (1146)

Oliver warns his
companions not
to tell their
names. (1155)

Balan demands
Oliver's name.
(1166)

Oliver answers,
"Eugynes, the
son of a poor
yeoman," (1168)

and says that all
his companions
are poor knights.
(1171)

Balan is vexed at this, (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1184)

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depesshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my darteres wel sharped wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” themne aroos bruillant & sayd: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seygnorye ne your lor¹des be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thynge to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperor wold yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folyly for to come it to hys kepyng.

28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

A fter that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had com- maunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

¹ col. 2.

greuous pry¹son brutamont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale doun in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

4 that no lyȝt myght be seen: in the which were put & nourysshed serpentes, crapauldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stenche was comprysed. and there passed a streme of the salte 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduit, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld them & shet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the Payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessyte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes 20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl doun a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned 24 seyng that the water grewe alwaye. ²ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myȝt not helpe hym. & whan

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled & sayd: "o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?" 32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me." this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr oliuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

and wishes he had his sword,
and could get at the Saracens.

Floripas hears
their cries and
groans. (1202)

She is young and
well made:
with lips like a
rose in May:

her eyes like a
falcon's:

her mouth small:

her shoulders
straight, and her
breasts like two
apples.

So fair is she that
a sight of her
would satisfy a
man who had
fasted 3 or 4 days.

Her mantle was
made by a fairy
at Colchos.

not to make such complainte. reioyce we our self & traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good swerde in his hande onely: for I make a vowe to god 4 that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd in suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Flotypes the syster 8 of fyerabras & daughter of thadmyrall herd them & had grete compassyon of þe complayntes that Olyuer made. this douȝter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed of body; resonable of lengthe, ¹whyt & rody as rose in 12 maye. hyr heyre was shynynge as the fyne golde, & hir vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe: and hyr chere lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16 her nose strayt whiche was wel semely; the ij browes whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe; hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel tyssued with reed; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20 roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne al wel proporcyoned to the remenaunte of the hede: with litel sholdres strayte & egalle: & tofore aboue the gyrdle hir pappes were reysek after the facyon of ij 24 apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel montayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple meruayllously ryche fylle & pouldred with sterres of fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrye, & it 28 was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And flotypes was so fayre wyth hyr abylluments that yf a persone had fasted iij or iiiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos of a woman of the fay-²rye (there as Iason gate the

¹ E iij, back.

² col. 2.

ffiese of golde, as it is redde in the destractyon of troye
 almoost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte
 4 of this damoysel eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe
 men in pryson & in especyal of Olyuer of whome shē
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle
 where as the paynyme were moche desolate for fyerasbras
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche
 were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded
 12 tydynge they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerasbras was
 taken & vaynquysshed ; wherfore anone shē made a
 grete crye and syghed for anguyshe. thenne was al the
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng shē sente anone for bruta-
 mont & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame,"
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a
 nought our goddes : & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyera-
 bras your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete
 24 ¹value whyche is one of the best made men that euer
 was knownen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd
 in loyal batayl Fyerasbras." Anone florypes had enuye
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont : "I wyl speke
 28 with hem ; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd :
 "Madame, ye shal pardon me : ye may not see them
 by cause of the fylthe and dyshoneste of the place : it
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your
 fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes
 by a woman I have knownen somme shamed & deceyued."

Floripas enters
 her father's hall,

and is told of her
 brother's capture.

She asks Bruta-
 mont who the
 prisoners are.
 (1216)
 He tells her. (1219)

Floripas wishes to
 see and speak with
 them, (1226)

but Brutamont
 refuses to open
 the door. (1228)

Floripas is enraged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on the head and kills him, (1251) and throws him into the dungeon. (1257)

Floripas opens the door,

and asks the prisoners who they are. (1266)

Oliver answers her. (1268)

Floripas offers to release them if they will promise to do what she wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises. (1284)

whan floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro hyr self and sayd to hym : " O euyl glouton despytous, oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage ? I promyse the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she made semblaunte to opene the pryon and brutamont gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seyng the porter wythstonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage þat 8 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl doun & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryon where the frensshe ¹men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12 abasshed whan they herd hym, wenyng to them that it had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyued them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche & dyd do open the pryon & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16 to see the pryonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20 men of charlemayns, & haue ben brouȝt hyther to thadmyral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24 curtoys florypes, not-withstondyng þat she was not crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon and said to them : " I promyse you that I shal put you out of this pryon, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, & faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32 shal be. & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so þat we be furnysshed of armes & been ²aboue for to meddle wyth

¹ col. 2.

² E iiii, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the daughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer
meche; yet ye be there and wel fare for to be outa
Floripa beggs him
to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It
is better a man wysely to be stytte than folysshly to
speke." Gherard sayd to the lady : " Damoysel, I shal

8 saye to you one worde. he that is detayned and strongely
empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and
melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the
curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he
spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

Floripa begs him to be quiet. (1293)

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to
hym that they shold be put oute of prysone hym thought
thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the
lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue

Floripa compli-
ments Gerard.
(1302)

veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in
somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in
loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillaum
20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame,
ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro
hens vnto iiiij. myle ye shal not fynde hys pere

1 ¶ How the frensshe men were put out² of
24 prysone and were vysyted¹ by the noble
mayde Floripes and¹ of the beaulte of hyr
chaumbre : capitulo iiiij

28 **W**HAN the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr
wyth the barons pryoners she called hir
chamberlayn and made hym to bryng a corde & a staffe
bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it doun. And whan
the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrist Olyuer to goo
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by
grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripa sends for
a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver.

and the others
after.

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir. (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window. (1369)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4 Aboue the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter ; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lyke- 8 nesse by meruayllous facyon : & after somme scryptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters ¹ was a gardyn 12 pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden conforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vrygynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes : " A, madame, I knowe wel 20 these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- 24 bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot : & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god 28 mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned hyr ire ayenst 32 hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde : and called her varlet whyche cam to ²hyr prestly and threwe

the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thyS olde woman tumbled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr:

¶ "Now goo, thou olde & despitous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred ne in daunger by the." and herof the barons made grete Ioye;

8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al blody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayd to hym: "Syr Olyuer, ne doubt ye not for

The French
knights are de-
lighted. (1374)

Floripes sees the
blood from
Oliver's wound,
(1380)

12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe:"

& wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: & anone as oliuer had vsed it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre

and heals him
with a draught.
(1389)

16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyd of al good vytaylle and delycyous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after

The knights are
supplied with
food, baths, and
clothes. (1395)

20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at theyr ease; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wthy mantels ryche of ¹sylke & golde broudred. & thenne

24 Floripes sayd: "lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to bryng you oute of pryon mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were

28 knownen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubt Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturally I ought to do repreef. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abasshed: ye knowe

Floripes reminds
them of what she
has done for them.
(1396)

32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you." and after the sayd Florypes sayd: "lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce ² whome I haue longe tyme loued: he is named guy of

Floripes tells
them she has
long loved Guy of
Burgundy, (1411)

¹ E v, back.

² Ed. frannce.

whom she had
seen first at Rome
with Lucifer,
(1414) and over-
came him.

For his sake she is
willing to become
a Christian. (1423)

Gerard says they
will do anything
if she will give
them arms.

Floripas gives
them a damsel
a-piece.

All this was very
noble of Floripas,
but shows the
natural curiosity
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godeleyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme whan I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admiral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynyme & the sayd guy of bourgoyne Iustedon to gyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym doun to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue ¹hym not to husband I shal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frensche men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thyss fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd 'to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were arm'd & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrist florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensche men, alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynge, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken ²oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

¹ col. 2.

² E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the fayth of personnes doth grete alegement of tormente, for the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of theyr enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore
 8 they were delyuered fro pryson was come fro ferre, that was of rome, for guy of bourgoyn whome shē had in loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-
 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprySED how loue in thys damoysel was fyxed and comprySED of longe affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the prys-
 oners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights
had to thank her
love for Guy for
their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad-
 myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche
 wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myȝt not
 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he
 had for ȝis sone, whan he myght no lenger
 endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym :
 “Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !

Reyner is in great
grief for his son,
(1428)

24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone,
 for whome I am in contynuell anguysse ? yf I haue
 none other tdynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-
 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo
 28 thyder.” whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued

and says he must
go and find him.
(1431)

and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,
 & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : “ Fayre neuewe
 rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant
 thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the

Charles tells
Roland that he
must go to Balan,
the next morning.

¹ e vj, col. 2.

and demand from
him the reliques and
the release of his
prisoners. (1436)

Roland remon-
strates,

as also does
Naymes. (1446)

Charles says
Naymes shall go
too. (1452)

Basyn protests,
and Charles orders
him to go also,
(1458)
and likewise
Terry, (1472)

Ogier, (1480)

Richard of Nor-
mandy, (1460)

and Guy of Bur-
gundy. (1488)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for
which I haue taken grete payne: And after aske of
hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf
he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4
drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the necke,
his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol-
land answerd: "Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy
on me! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8
neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche
sayd: "syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland
is your neuewe; ye knowe of what¹ valewe he is of. yf
he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." "And I 12
assure you," sayd Charles, "that ye shal goo wyth hym,
and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys
sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym:
"& how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes? I am 16
certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal
not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his
heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and
so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20
lyke to thother; therfore he was ordeyned to goo also.
Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo;
and therfore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.
Rycharde of Normandye came to the emperour and 24
sayd: "Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo
pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllyngly ye wyl make
them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue
lost them." "by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28
charles, "ye shal goo wyth the other; and thenne shal
ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral
whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy
of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym: "come to me: ye are my 32
cosyn, and of my next parentage; ye shall be the seventh
for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. ² And
ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

¹ e vj, back.

² e vj, back, col. 2.

that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys
cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome
I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he
4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,
and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of
bourgoyn, " ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer
8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper.

And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen
barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes
said for them al : "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted¹ in
12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement.

We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for
to departe ; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in
al thexcessyte, that hath trespassed¹ to vs, we pardonne
16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offendid¹ to ony, In
thonour of god that it be pardonné to vs." with these
wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to
wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons :

20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued¹, vnto god¹ of heuen I
commaunde you ; and the meryte of his holy passyon
and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."

And so they departed¹ on theyr waye hastily, transport-
24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

who commands
them to God,

and so they
depart. (1503)

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns
to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,
which were recounted¹ by the peres of
28 fraunce, and' slain : capitulo vj

IN aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al
sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara-
32 syns for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys
commaundement came : & one maradas, the moost fyerce
of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, Balan calls a
council. (1512) Maradas asks

100 BALAN SENDS 15 KINGS TO DEMAND THE SURRENDER OF FIERABRAS.

why they have
been called toge-
ther. (1516)

wherfore hast thou sente for vs ? " ballant answerd and sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þe trouth. Charle-
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4
londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I
cunceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde ¹hym,
olde dotard, that he byleue in mahoun our god wyth- 12
oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16
yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym
wyth an hondred thousand men arm'd. And yf by
aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte
of his heed wythout ony mercy :" whan thadmyral had 20
sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24
membred. but byleue ye not that I say thys for coward-
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I
wyl accomlysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28
put to dethe ten or I be very. And yf I do not as I
haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel
as Maradas ; wherfore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32
wente to horse-backe, wel arm'd, & grete speres in theyr
hondes, with penouns ²reysed puyssauntly, and Iour-
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

Balan tells them
that they must go
to Mormyonde,
(1522)

and demand from
Charles the sur-
render of Fiera-
bras, and homage
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-
tests, but says
they will go.
(1538)

They arm them-
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

¹ e vij, col. 2.

² e vij, back.

passed the brydge of mantryble; & assone as they myght,
 they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named
 came and recounted those sarasyns. And fyrist, duc
 4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes: "O lord
 god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made!
 After they had
 passed Mantrible
 Naymes sees them
 coming, (1555)
 and is frightened.
 See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete
 puyssauice? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland
 8 sayd: "my lordes, ne doubtē ye noo thyngē. Beholde,
 and see them; they be not passyng' xx or xxx; late vs
 ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,
 and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partie of
 12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed,
 whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men: "how be
 ye so Infortunat and cursed to come and mete wyth vs,
 and ye be cristen?" Duke Naymes ansuerd: "what
 16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynnously and ouer
 folysshly: we be men longyng to þe redoubted emperour
 Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant
 thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym: "ye be in daunger:
 20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse?" Naymes
 ansuerd: "we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu
 our maker." maradas said: "which ¹ of you dare Iuste
 ayenst me?" "I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas
 24 sayd: "thou art moche presumptuous; For yf I had
 suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde² them al wyth
 my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout
 gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes:
 28 "herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you
 moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after
 I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland
 had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after
 32 sayd to Maradas: "thou hast folyly spoken and thought
 thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou
 shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I
 deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

¹ e vij, back, co^l. 2.

² Orig. confonnde.

Roland advises
them to fight.
(1563)

Maradas chal-
lenges them, (1563)

and asks if any of
them will fight
him. (1576)

Naymes offers to
do so, (1577)
but Maradas
mocks at him,
and says he is too
old. (1579)

Roland is enraged
at this,

charges at him,
(1589)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recounted
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þe stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4
swerdeſ they smote the helmes rychely wrought.
Rolland was so furyous, that he¹ helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and
departed it; & after by grete force recouer^d hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and clefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma² radas fyl doun to therthe. whan the
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as 12
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the
frenſſhe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he defended hym ouer meruayllously.

And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frenſſhe men ayenſt the sarasyns, that alle the
paynymeſ were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20
for to ſhewe how they were destroyed by the frenſſhe
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred ſeuен glotons of fraunce, which were men of
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ranne
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr ſo gretely ayenſt
vs, that al be dede ſauf I, whyche am escaped wyth
grete paine for to come and ſhewe to you." whan 32
thadmyral vnder³ſtode thys, he was almoost dede for
ſorowe of the deth of hys kynges aforesayd.

¹ Orig. he he.

² e viij.

³ e viij, col. 2

and cuts him
down with
Durandal. (1605)

The other Sar-
acens try to avenge
his death,

but are all slain
save one, (1624)

who escaped and
carried the news
to Balan. (1627)

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :
 capitulo viij

W han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth
 8 the sarasyns, they were al trauaylle^d and^d wary,
 and wente and^d rested^d them in a medowe al
 grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd^d the duc
 naymes : " my lordes, I counceyille you that we retorne
 to Charles, and^d say to hym how we haue doon ; & I wote

12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe
 how we haue gouerned^d vs." Thenne Rolland^d answer^d
 and^d sayd^d : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornyng?"

Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-
 myral, how someuer it be, and late vs do one thyng
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one

20 of these hedes, and^d we shal presente them to thadmyral."

Naymes sayd^d to hym : " syr 'rolland, it semeth that
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be
 anone slayn." Thyery and^d the other were of thoppyn-

24 yon of Rolland^d ; and^d so eche of them toke an hede, and^d
 rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrist
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche
 was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and^d sayd^d to his felowes :

28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is
 Aygremore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogyer
 the danoys sayd^d : " vs byhoueth fyrist to passe by thys
 brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx

32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been
 soulded wyth leed^d and^d cyment, & with grete barres of
 yron : vpon² whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest
 themselves,
 and debate what
 to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes
 to return, (1653)

but Roland will
 not agree,

and suggests each
 should take the
 head of one of the
 Saracen kings
 and present them
 to Balan, (1662)

to which they all
 agree.

Ogler describes
 the bridge of
 Mantrible. (1678)

¹ e viij, back.

² Orig. wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knights can go on it abreast.

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete chaynes of yron. And aboue on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshaunte and shynynge lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named fla¹got, whyche is byneth the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye 12 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thynge, I praye you: care 20 not for passyng ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Duc naymes of bauyere reprysegd hym: "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28 receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth oute daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the 32 ²brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes & other glayues of defence. The fyrist that went byfore was

The river under Is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fierce- ly that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafre by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

duc Naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than ony of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after

Naymes rides in front.

4 sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

ansuerd: "I shal say you the trouth. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuer- theles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that

12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes:

16 "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of the brydge tofore al thyng." Due Naymes sayd:

Galafre demands his toll,

"porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes, 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C fawcons me¹wed, an C palfroyes in good poynte & rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must haue ii[j] sommyers charged

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoutte other excusa- cyon." due Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstondyng

28 that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not posysble to paye that he had deuysed: & ansuerd to the porter in this manere, and sayd:

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

32 "Syr porter, yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge com-

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

eth after vs, and harnoys more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

gentyfawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes,
and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other
Iewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle
playse your wylle." ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4
said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge
doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland,
which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe,
syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8
we passe thys brydge." and rolland came ¹ behynde alle
the other; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the
brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd
in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12
thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng
happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his
felowes, he lyghted doun from hys hors, and toke thylke
turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16
ryuer. ¶ Duc Naymes loked behynde hym, and sawe
the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord
god of heuen, I trowe the deuyl is in the body of Rou-
lland! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god 20
helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slain and
vylaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage
that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to
gouerne² hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24
enemye where he myȝt fynde hym.

Galafre believes
him and lets them
pass. (1755)

Roland meets a
Saracen,

and throws him
over into the
river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes
him.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the
Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr
message: capitulo viiiij 28

The French
knights enter into
Aigremore. (1768)

THE barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the
brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as
ballant was, they entred in to the towne in ³good
ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32
noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

¹ f j, back. ² Orig. gruerne. ³ f j, back, col. 2.

other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and
buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn
strangled; and they recounted a sarasyn whome they
4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym
to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe. and
thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre
lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye
8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold
by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes sayd to hym
"Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute
hauyng attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace,
12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."

And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore
the admiral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes
of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of
16 alle the world, to whom onely couȝt to be gyuen creaunce
entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng
charlemayn, puyssaut, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-
land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and
20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes
of the feet, the Admyral ¹here present, as moche as
tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyd be-
yonde þe bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons
24 on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses
and do to vs vlylonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,
they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ Whan the Admy-
ral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe

28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came

the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,
and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere
syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen
32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slain
your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vlylonnye."

The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys
tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc², that

A Saracen shows
them the way to
Balan. (1772)

Naymes says he
will deliver the
message. (1776)

They present
themselves before
the Emir.

Naymes begins
his message by
cursing Balan and
his men.

Balan is enraged.

The Saracen king,
which had
escaped,
tells him who the
French knights
are.

Naymes delivers the message, demanding the sacred reliques, (1808)

and the release of the prisoners. (1810)

Balan in a rage

bids him stand aside, (1826)

swearing that he will have him put to death.

Richard of Normandy delivers the message (1846) to the same effect.

Balan recognizes and curses him. (1860)

and bids him stand aside with Naymes.

be shold^t fynysshe hys message. And the duc ansuerd that he so do wold^t gladly, and sayd in thys manere : “The grete noble kyng^t of Fraunce commaundeth the that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4 blesseyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned^t wyth, and the other relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and payne ; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in prysone folysshly. and yf thou do not as I haue to the 8 deuyse^t, Charles shal make the ¹to be hanged^t by the necke on a gybet and strangled vylaynously.” Thadmyral ballant, replenysshed^t of an entencyon moche oulfrageous, sayd to Naymes the duc : “Thou hast 12 gretely defouled^t me by oulfrage, and I haue wyllyngly herde the. Goo forth and sytte doun by yonde pyler, & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde. Mahommet my god^t, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16 gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see thy hede flee fro thy sholdres.” The duc Naymes ansuerd : “yf it playse god^t my maker, & his blesyyd moder, pou shalt haue made a lesyng.” After hym 20 spake Rychard^t duc of Normandye, & said : “vnderstonde me, syr admyral! Charles the kyng, with his berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puyaunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes, w^thyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysone^rs. & yf thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þ^e, & shal never haue mercy on the.” Thadmyral ballant supposed to haue knownen hym, & sayd thus : “mahommet, in whom I byleue, curse the ! thou resemblest wel Rychard of 32 normandye, whych slewe my ²vnkle corsuble. Now wold^t Mahoun the god^t that he were here ! he shold^t never etc mete tyl he were dede. Goo and sytte doun

by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr
thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore
ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,

After him Basyn
repeats the mes-
sage, (1864)

4 aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth
the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been
requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle
the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went

8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc
of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyere & countenaunce
of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-
garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed

and after him
Terry of Ardane,
(1874)

12 that he had ben a deuyl. And after, thyerry sayd:
"herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.

at whose appear-
ance Balan is
frightened. (1888)

Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth
the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou
16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys
barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou
sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the
vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-

20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what
man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe ¹ is
he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preyseed &
vaunted?" Thenne the duc Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle

He asks Terry to
describe Charles
to him. (1892)

24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &
hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that
yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone
he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on

Terry tells him
that Charles is
noble and brave,

28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an
olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent
tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &
after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth

and cares no more
for Balan than for
a dead dog or a
rotten apple.

Balan laughs

32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.
yf I were now in thy wylle and subgectyon, as thou
arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth
me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

¹ f ij, back, col. 2.

I shold⁴ doo hange the by the necke, and⁴ strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vassal," sayd⁴ the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd⁴ grete folye. For by Mahommet my god, in lyke wyse shal I doo of the, as thou hast sayd⁴ of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good⁴ Ogyer the danoys tofore hym, and⁴ sayd⁴: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche¹ wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and⁴ yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellis he shal do dysmembre the, and⁴ doo the deye shamefully." 12 Thadmyral, beyng al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland⁴ the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doyng⁴ to hym ony reuerence, and⁴ sayd⁴ to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng⁴ and⁴ Emperour redoubted⁴, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god⁴ Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world⁴, & in the gloryous vrygyn marie his moder; and⁴ 20 do the to be baptysed⁴, and⁴ thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and⁴ atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred⁴ and⁴ delyuerd hole and⁴ in good⁴ poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged⁴ as a theef." Thadmyral sayd to hym: "thou hast rebuked⁴ and⁴ blamed⁴ me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged⁴ & strangled⁴." Thenne Roulland⁴ answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so,² For I doubte the 32 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned⁴."

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely. (1806)

Balan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and⁴ sayd to hym in thys manere: "Charles

¹ f iij.

² f iij, col. 2.

commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons ; and thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man : and yf thou wylt

and repeats the message,

4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute ende and wythoute begynnyng. And yf thou byleuest my counceyl, thou mayst be in his grace. And lo ! what thou shalt do : take 8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors, and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles, and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to 12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errours and oultrages.

advising Balan to go humbly to Charles

¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty ; and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully¹ to dye."

and beg for mercy. (1940)

16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the other that were of hys ²counceyl, and demaunded theyr 20 aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd.

Balan is greatly enraged,

Anone sortybrant sayd to hym : "Syr admyral, I counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe

and holds a council to consider what is to be done with the messengers. (1956)

24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is pensyf: yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.

Sortibrant advises their immediate execution, (1961)

¶ After ye shal descende in to fraunce, & doo you be crowned there as kyng!" " by mahoun," sayd ballant,

28 " ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuyse : goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr felowes, for to do after the enterpryse." And thus as I haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencyon to make of the 32 frensshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuyse.

to which Balan agrees.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the frensshe men were saued', and' lodged' to-

¹ Orig. shamefulluy.

² f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other
thynges: capitulō ix

Floripas appears
and asks her
father who the
French knights
are. (1977)

Balan tells her,

and asks her advice
what he is to
do with them.
(1980)

"Cut off their
heads, and burn
them," says
Floripas.

Balan assents,
and proposes to
do so at once,

but Floripas says
it is dinner-time,

and asks for them
to be given into
her charge. (2000)

Sortibrant warns
Balan that women
are not to be
trusted. (2013)

Floripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4 chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there a'parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8 wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue blamed me and offendid gretely, more than I can telle you or say. What cunceyl gyue ye to me that I ought to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say 12 to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserued it. And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admiral, 16 "ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon. Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other." "good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne, and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20 tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were pryoners. 24

¶ And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte; and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28

¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was contente thyt hys doughter ²shold haue them in kepyng. Alwaye sortibrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32 Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys fayte ye ought to trusste in a woman, by cause of theyr

¹ f iij, back, col. 2.

² f iiij.

mutabylyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes

4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray-tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne me to ouermuche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale doun

8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-
oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr

12 naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of eternal gloriye, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in

16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes: "What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maad you to speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of suche thynge." ¹Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-

20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the douzter sayd to them that they were not assembled to plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette

24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my

28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche de-maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and of theyr lordes & tydynge. Now ye may thynke that

32 they were gladde eche of other that they were al togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crystendom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrescyon the

Floripas in a rage threatens Sortybrant. (2016)

She conducts the French knights to her chamber. (2024)

Naymes is struck with the beauty of Floripas.

Roland and Oliver embrace each other. (2030)

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynyme, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of thei 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2033)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2049)
he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

and after Roland's.

¶ But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente ¹ to a thynge, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh ⁸ no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyeue hyr enterpryse and determinacyon. Florypes retched of noo thynge but that she myȝt haue tydylnges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome she ¹² had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth ¹⁶ of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuyore you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in ²⁰ surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuyng." she was contente, & they were contente, and promyset fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the daughter came to duc Naymes for to knowe what ²⁴ he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the douȝter, "your kyng is ²⁸ sory for you." After she came to Rychard and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, ²I am Rychard of Normandye." the daughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the! thou puttest to ³² deth on a tyme corsuble myn vnkle. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to duc Myllon, & am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. (2064)

Anone the daughter cryed hym mercy & kneled doun to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After, the daughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye haue promyseid to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I wold gladly haue ttdynges." rolland sayd: "I swere to you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot 12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and 16 receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan Florypes ¹vnderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour, 20 and sware [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke on a gybette. Rolland enhorted Guye that he shold do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduaanced hym, & hath 24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayd: "the sone of god of crystyante be preyseed and honoured, For I haue tofore myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst, 28 & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, she approched to hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys chekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne 32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the reliques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge and after produces the sacred reliques, (2114)

Floripas tells the knights how she has long loved Guy of Burgundy. (2072)

Roland calls on Guy to come forward and accept her as his wife

(2095), but Guy refuses. (2096)

Floripas swears that if he does not she will have them all hanged. (2102)

Guy gives way. (2104)

Floripas kisses him, (2112)

the crown and
the nails,

which the French
knights devoutly
kiss. (2132)

whome was the gloryous crowne wyth whiche Ihesu
eryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For
Ioye they alle wepte ¹moche tenderly, and one after the
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they
had ben tofore.

¶ How Lucafer neuewe of the admiral vyo-
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12
was slain of duc Naymes in blowyng of
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires
of Balan if it is
true that Fiera-
bras is a prisoner.
(2147)

Balan says it is.
(2152)

but that he has
twelve French
knights prisoners,
in charge of
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is
wrong to trust
them to a woman,
(2166)

Ballant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & sytting
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a specyal 16
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admiral, is it
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?"
Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28
ben comen as messagers ²fro the sayd charles, which
haue vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

¹ f v, col. 2.

² f v, back.

lytel thynge ben chaunged and torned fro theyr thouȝt.

neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by
your comaunderement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe
and that he will
go see if they are
safe. (2168)

4 what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth,"

said thadmyral, "ye say ryȝt wel, and make my
doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche

proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to

He goes to Flori-
pas' chamber,
and bursts open
the door with his
foot. (2180)

8 the chambre where the douter was and the frensshe

men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but

lyfte vp his ryȝt fote, and smote it so strongly
wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto

12 the grounde. Whan Florypes saw that she was al

abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble

knyght, I am ryȝt euyl contente of the vyoncience that
is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husband

Floripas calls on
Roland to avenge
this insult. (2186)

16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye

wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,

For I complayne me wythoute makyng ouermoch euyl
semblaunte." to whome Rolland answere: "doubte

Roland promises
to do so. (2195)

20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal

knowe that he hath euyll doon. And I promyse you

that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he
shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred-

Lucifer enters,
(2197)

24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al

armed wythout ony doubt he had to them. And

came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and
bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by

and first seizing
Naymes by the
beard, (2204)

28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that

almoost he had ouerthrown hym, & after sayd to hym:

demands his
name, (2207)
which Naymes
tells him, (2208)

"of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me."

The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,

32 and that is my contree, and am specyal counceyllour of

Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al

erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to

ballant the admiral a message fro the sayd charles,

and asks him to let him go. (2214)

Lucifer asks him to describe the French and their games. (2216)

Naymes says some hunt. (2221)

some play chess or tables. (2224)

and that they are all brave and hard to conquer.

Lucifer asks him if he knows the game of the "grete cole?" (2230)

Naymes says, "No."

Lucifer takes a coal and shows him how to blow it. (2236)

redoubted Emperour; & by cause that we haue not spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysoneers. Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4 al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuerd: "I am contente thy folye be pardonneſ the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of 1 fraunce, and of what enterpryſe, and what playes vſe 8 they whan they been in your royame?" "In trouthe," ſayd the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyſte. Somme ryde 12 oute on horsback, & ſomme goo in to the feldes and ſyng, other make good chere at tables, at the chesſe, & other playsaunte games. and in the morne euery man gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is ſayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesſe to þe 16 poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not lyghtly vanquyſhed. Suche been the peple in the contreye of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and 20 ſayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard that thou arte, thou ſpekeſt folyſhly. It is no thyng ſo of yourfeat, ne frenſſe men be of no valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24 trouthe," ſaid the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the Paynym ansuerd: "I ſhal teche you the manere," and he approched to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goyng Rolland made ſyng to the duc that he 28 ſhould bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, And blewſe ſo ſharply that the fyre flew alle aboute habundantly, and after 2 ſaid to duc naymes that he muſt also blowe. The Duc took 32 the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewſe the bronde ſo puysauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente
al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was
almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes

Naymes blows
one so as to burn
Lucifer's beard,
(2248)

4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke
that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so
grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the
grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou
8 arte, Whome I byséche god confounde, thou wendest to
haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there
wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth,
syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blesyd

and then kills him
with the brand.
(2248)

12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd
duc Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys
folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he
truffed wyth me." Flories the curtoys came ner vnto
16 duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to
be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more
charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his
ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote
20 now ¹that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse
me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader
had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,
but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vlayn-
24 ous deth."

Roland praises his
play. (2253)

Floripa thanks
him, (2256)

and declares she
would never have
married Lucifer.

¶ How, by the coundeyl of floripes, the frensshe
men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys
wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-
28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the
douȝter: ca. xj

Fllories was wyse, and had consyderacyon that
Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth
32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes,
knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

Floripa reminds
them that Lucifer

¹ f vj, back.

was Balan's
greatest friend,
and would surely
be missed,

and advises them
to arm them-
selves, (2270)

and suddenly
attack the Sar-
cens, (2275)

They arm, and
start out two and
two at night fall.
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-
suble, (2289)
and Oliver Cold-
roe, (2291)

The Saracens fly.
(2299)
Some jump out of
the windows,
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng. he abydeth for hym to come to dyner, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be retorne. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon ye shal be here encombred and assaylded, and al the 4 golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal be dede. Wherfore I cunceyl you that ye doo arme you and put you in poynte. take lyȝtly your helmes and your shieldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8 doubted of other vnarmed. therfore I wyl not that ye ¹ be closed ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12 and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dough-
ter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, & prestly armed them, and gyrded their swerdes aboute them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16 goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry, in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20 nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryȝt fyersly for to fygght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynyme and sara- 24 syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not. Roulland smote corsuble mortally ; Olyuer put to deth the Kynge Celdroe. Ther was not one but that they alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28 appoynted anone was torned vp so deun & caste to the grounde ; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and sowned in the place ; Sarasyns goon to therthe slain and dysmembred : Other lepe out of the ² wyndowes, whyche 32 after were founden dede : Other were all to-hewen, sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe doun in

to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche 4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Certeyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente." Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them 8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shettet fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle 12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawnen hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of 16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you 20 scorne me nomore, I shal ¹wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your wylle be doon; but the nyȝt is ouer nyghe; by myn 24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dysplaysaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you 28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I 32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come, Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawnen at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by a window. (2311)

The French are masters of the castle. (2321)

but have no food. (2325)

Balan, who had fallen into a ditch, calls for help. (2330)

Sortybrant and others rescue him. (2335)

He swears vengeance.

Sortybrant advises him to wait for daylight. (2352)

Balan laments over Lucifer. (2355)

He is sure the French knights cannot hold out, as they have no provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles send them any help. (2367)

In the morning the Saracens assemble, (2369)

they cover four square miles.

Balan engages Marvin, "a moche fals theef" to steal the magic girdle. (2387)

Marvin agrees. (2397)

And after I shal make flotypes the putayn to be brente in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes. And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4 socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo socours but yf it come ouer that brydge ; & of that other parte, charles shal ¹haue noo tdynges of his barons ne 8 shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12 concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle. Thenne come there so many paynynms in the contreye aboute that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. 16 ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were, whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none other conduyte ne conforte but to be wythin assyeged in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20 as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre, yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn creatures, & sayd to hym : " Marpyn, by the berde that 24 I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for to stele awaie the gyrdle that Flotypes bereth, I shal rewarde and gryeue to the largely of my golde & syluer, & thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28 it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me." ¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that ²as longe as it shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold 32 neuer haue be famyned. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne, or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

¹ f vij, back.

² f vij, back, col. 2.

shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght, he entred secretye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the 4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of Flotypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dyabolike wordes he opened it ; and whan he was wythin, he sawe that al þe barons were fast a-slepe, and he made so enchauntements that for no thynge they myght awake. and thenne he came to Flotypes, and serched so 8 12 pryuely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrdre hym self wylth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked, whiche was moche fayre ; & was enclyned anone to haue defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke, 16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye mochstrongely, and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherfore the maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they saw marbyn the theef as blacke ¹as a moore, the moost 20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bourgoyn herde the voys of flotypes, he came to hyr wylth hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that she shold not be aferde of ony thynge. And he came 24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the theef had defowled flotypes. but as sone as the theef herde hym, he sprange oute of the bedde wylth grete haste, and Guye of bourgoyn recounted hym, and gaf hym so 28 grete a stroke that he cleft hym by the myddel, and cutte a two the gyrdel, and the candel quenched. The other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke, & the theef dede, they threw the body in to the see 32 wylth the gyrdle. And whan it was knownen that he had stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wylth hym in the see, there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a Iewel. And Flotypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

At night he crosses the moat, (2403)

climbs into the tower, (2406)

and comes to Floripas' chamber. (2408)

He sends the French knights to sleep by enchantment. (2411)

He attempts to ravish Floripas, (2428) who cries for help. (2431)

Guy hears her cries, (2441)

runs to her chamber, (2442)

and cuts down Marvin with his sword. (2448)

He throws his body into the sea,

and the girdle is lost. (2464)

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be reconuerd.
Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted
hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god¹des
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised
at Marvin's not
returning. (2482)

W han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8
Marbyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche
abasshed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered
that Marbyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is deed,
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you
that ye doo sounre your trompettes for tassemble your
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16
crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes
they doo caste stones & darteres enuenymed, but—blessyd
be god!—the frensshe men doubted them no thynge
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in
suche wyse that they had noo thynge to ete. Thenne
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24
And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche
dysplaysaunte for the necessytye of the frensshe men, of
hyr self, and of hyr damoyselles. often tymes shie
swoynd & fyl to grounde ²as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys
felawes: " My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessytye
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

Sortybrant says he
is surely dead,
(2484)

and advises Balan
to order the
assault to begin.
(2485)

The French de-
fend themselves
well. (2492)

but their pro-
visions begin to
fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to
be felt, especially
by the women.
(2497)

Guy of Burgundy
proposes to his
fellows

damoyselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold
abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme
vytaylle ; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd : " My
lordes, I wote now wel that your god^t is of lytel power,
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforde ; And I
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they
had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and
sayd : " Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the ¹puyssance
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al
20 byleue on them wythout varyeng!" The mayde sayd :
" Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,
24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.
And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,
and Termagaunt, the god^t Margot, and Iupyn, and many
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,
28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and
encence ; and many other tresours were there assembled.
Guy of bourgoyn sayd, whan he sawe soo grete
tresour : " A ! lord god^t, who wold haue wende that
32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled ?
Wold god^t that Rychard of normandye had now Iupyn
in hys eyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplaysshe
wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyte. And that

to make a sortie
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that
if they would be-
lieve on Mahomet
they would have
food enough.
(2528)

Roland asks to see
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads
them to the
shrine, (2535)

where were
Appolyn, and
Mahomet, Terma-
gant, Margot, and
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-
sure.

Guy wishes they
had all that gold.
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn
þe chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with
the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette
them in good poynte.” Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4

Floripas rebukes
him, (2559)
and says they
ought to worship
her gods.

Guy says they are
all asleep. (2564)

He smashes
Jupiter, and
Ogyer smashes
Margot. (2567)

Floripas is con-
verted, and begins
to pray. (2576)

“Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye
them mercy & adoure them, ¹to thende that they
enclyne them to you to doo you confort.” guy sayd
vnsto hyr: “I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8
see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may
not here ne see.” and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And
Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe,
and were anone alle to-broken. Wherfore Roulland 12
sayd to the daughter: “In trouthe, madame, I see that
ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been
fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make
semblaunte to releue hym.” Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16
had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu
Cryste, sayeng thus: “I see, syr Roulland, that ye say
the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl
that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20
herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vrygyn,
of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you
socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete
vytalle for to satysfye our hungre.” 24

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the
toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which
they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged'
of vytaylle: capitulo xijj 28

She faints with
hunger. (2584)

² **W**HAN Florypes had sayd, she fyl doun to the
erth a-swoune for sorowe & anguysshe.
Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche sorou-
fully for the loue of hyr. H[e]reupon Olyuer the 32
courageous came tofore them and sayd: “My lordes,

I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryon, but 4 that I shold fyght quycly wyth the paynyme;” & semblably sayd rolland. Wherfore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, & 8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogyer, it byhoueth that one of you¹ abyde for to kepe the place, that at the 12 retornyng we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes conde take noo pacience, but that he answerd thus: “Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched, 16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of ²synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte 20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubte ye no thynge therof.” Rolland ansuerd: “syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde.” but it was not their playsyr 24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shetted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in 28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherfor hastely he sente for brullant and Sortibrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd: 32 “my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slain, i shal be euyl contente. Wherfore do sowne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe.”

¹ orig. yon.² g j. back.

Oliver proposes a sortie, (2598)

to which all agree.

They sally out. (2615)

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogyer to remain behind to guard the gate. (2618)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. (2620)

Thierry and Geoffrey agree to remain. (2631)

Balan sees them coming, (2638)

and bids Sortibrant assemble his men to resist them. (2645)

The Saracens
attack them,

but in a little
while more than
100 are killed.
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's
nephew, comes
up with 15,000
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on
his companions.
(2670)

All the Saracens
are afraid of him.
(2679)

After the battle
the French
knights meet 20
pack-horses, laden
with provisions
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the
escort. (2703)

And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assayled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. ¹For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vctorye, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouȝt to be. & after that þe batayll was fynysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by ²the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Incontynent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl

¹ g j, back, col. 2.

² g ij.

were slain anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes & Wyllyam the scot conduytē & ledde them forth. And Rollandē and the other came & auoydedē the place, 4 in suchē wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but this thyng was not doon without daunger andē grete payne.

and drive them
inside the castle
gates. (2704)

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the 8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, andē de-maundedē of thadmyral, and the com-playntes that Florypes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 A S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as they wente in theyr repaire, andē ladde the som-
myers afore saydē, there came so grete habundaunce of men of armes of the partie of kyngē Claryon, that it was

The Saracens
press heavily on
the French. (2706)

16 merueyelle. There was thenne an harde andē stronge recontre, in so moche that duc basyn was slain, & Aulbery hys ¹sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye, Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slain 20 and abode. andē yet thys was not the moost harm, For the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menacedē of kyngē Claryon, he auauancedē hym for to smyte hym. that came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slain

Basyn and Aubrey
are slain, (2730)

24 vnder hym of the paynyme, & sodeynly he was en-
uyronnedē of moo than an hondred knyghtes sarasyns,
whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, & after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and

and Guy taken
prisoner, (2743)

28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at his backe. andē whan guy sawe hym thus deteynedē, he began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ “ O Ihesus, veray god, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now,

and led away
blindfolded. (2747)

32 that am euyl fortunedē? O Ihesus, conforte me! O noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, andē myn

He prays and
cries for help.
(2749)

¹ g ij, col. 2.

Clarion mocks
Guy. (2753)

The French are so
hard pressed that
they have to take
refuge in the
castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires
after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her
he is a prisoner.
(2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares
she will surrender
the castle if Guy
be not rescued
before two days.
(2792)

vncle, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng^t claryon sayd to hym: "Fayr frende, no thynge shal auayle the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng! I shal delyuer the al lyuyng^t to the admyral of spayn thys day, And⁴ to-morne thou shalt be hanged." But now ye may wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys felowes, were euyl contente whan they sawe the Erle Guye soo prysionner. ¶ Neuertheles¹ they dyd grete 8 feates of armes or they were constrainyd to entre in to the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thenne floripes cam anon to rolland, & said to hym: "syr rolland, I 12 requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of bourgoyn my husband become. I wote wel, whan ye departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother. Ye ought to bryng hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16 Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland^t ansuerd: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see hym; the paynyme haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20 knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth alle a-swoun more than iij tymes as dede; but rolland^t, whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24 rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons of fraunce, by that god^t that maad heuen & erthe, yf I haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whome I ought to be maryed, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28 passed. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to hym, and for loue of hym be baptysed and be crysten. Alas! our loues haue sone faylled. This sorowe hath made me² wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had 32 these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland^t myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but promyseg^t hyr to make hyr glad wythin ij dayes, for

¹ g ij, back.

² g ij, back, col. 2.

thenne atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr playsyr, and that she shold no thyng^r doubte therof ; “ for knowe ye surely,” sayd rolland, “ I had leuer to 4 be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &, madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may not bryng hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre 8 dayes passed syth we ete, we haue purchaced vytayl for vs & these damoyselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente to entretiene the lyf : ” for ye ouȝt to knowe that they 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys, the barons and the damoyselles thanked god of al, and 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng^r and lawdyng^r god deuoutelye.

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn, whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled, 20 dyscolourd, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye 1 by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for þ^o daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des- 24 poyled of his armes ; & thenne appyered his body wel membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name & who he was. the baron ansuerd : “ Admyral, I fere not to say the trouthe ; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub- 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel to be doubted.” ballant ansuerd : “ I knowe the wel ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my 32 douȝter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me gretely : & I know wel that she loueth the more than ony man lyuyng ; & I for that loue haue lost many men of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Roland promises
he will rescue
him, (2804)

and advises her to
take some of the
food which they
had won. (2812)

Meanwhile Guy
is led before
Balan, (2820)

who demands his
name. (2826)

Guy tells him.
(2829)

Balan recognizes
him as his daugh-
ter's love,

and the cause of
all his trouble.
(2836)

Balan demands the names of the knights in the castle. (2838)

Guy recounts their names.

A Saracen gives him a blow on the mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him with one hand, and with the other breaks his neck. (2856)

The Saracens fall on him and beat him nearly to death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in shourt tyme, & dysmembred. & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4 tour, of whom we haue ben assayld with so daungerously." Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there, Olyner, his felowe, ryght courageous, Therry, due of Ardayne, Rycharde of Normandye, Gherard¹ of Mundydyer, Naymes due of bauyere, & basyn the genewey, whom ye haue slain; but, by the grace of god & helpe of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12 myral was ryȝt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye; Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood yssued outh of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16 that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour, and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20 smote hym vpon the grete bone of þe necke behynde, that he brake it, And; wythoute moeuyng of hande or foot, he fyl doun deed to the grounde tofore the admiral. ¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24 he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presence tofore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara- 28 syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admiral had not commaunded them that ²he shold not be put to 32 deth in suche manere.

¹ g iij, col. 2.

² g iij, back.

¶ How the paynyme had' purposed' to haue
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym
4 myȝtely : capitulo xv

A fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and
straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brullant
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many
8 other of his cunceyl, and sayd to them : " my frendes,
I praye you that ye gyue to me cunceyl what I ought
to do wyth thys prysoner, whyche dothe me so grete
reproche & despysyng^t, as ye see and knowe." " Syr,"
12 sayd Sortybrant, " I shal gyue to you good cunceyl.
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the
prysnners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this

16 prysner ; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe
vnto þ^e said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in
good poynte : and I am sure that the frey[n]sshe men be
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see
20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for
to socoure hym ; & your peple that shal be hydde in
the busshement shal come out on them & take them.
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your

24 playsyr." this cunceyl was approued by thadmyral to
be good, & was therwyth wel content ; wherfore, wyth-
oute takyng^t of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place

28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on
hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore : &
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a
council. (2869)

Sortybrant advises
him to have Guy
hanged. (2884)

in front of the
castle,

and to set an
ambush for the
French if they
should try to
rescue him. (2880)

This advice is
approved. (2891)

20,000 Saracens
are placed in
ambush. (2892)

and Guy is led
bound to the
gallows. (2895)

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboue his necke, and hys eyen bounden, & sawe no thynge whyther he went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to crye: “O redemptour of the world, my maker and my god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in to thy kepyng, for the body taketh hys ende! And lyke as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre the to cunceyll and conforte me. ¶ O noble barons of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf ¹ye suffre me to be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland, fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me on lyue.” he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes, Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel roche, and sawe the galowes reysek. Wherfore he came to hys felawes and sayd: “I meruaylle moche what thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon.”

He calls on his
companions for
help. (2911)

Roland, from a
window, sees the
gallows. (2913)

and tells the
others. (2917)

Naymes guesses
the object of the
gallows. (2922)

Floripas implores
Roland to rescue
Guy, (2928)

for she can never
survive him.

Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them, that withoute faute they were made for to hange on guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued, that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes reysek, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husband, so shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she was reduced; and began to crye: “O noble knyghtes, shal ye suffre guy of hourgoyn your felawe to be hanged tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye, by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the wyndowe, & shal deye in despe²racyon.” and after she came to rolland, & kneled doun on both hyr knees, and kyssed hys feet humbly, in sayeng: “Syr Rolland, in

thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to take the Payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye, and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme 4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the tyme is ouer shhort; so that by the playsyr of god ye shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes armed them moche hastely, and gyrded theyr swerde 8 and sheldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony ferther, rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth & our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-12 duyte & ¹loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to- gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,

16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged. And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde, that prestly he be reyseyd, And not to leue hym for lyf ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he 20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I swere ²to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in 24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & shie went in to hyr chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it

28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good courage they yssued out, noo thynge dredyng the puys- saunce of the paynyme. & after, Florypes and hyr damoysellys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.

32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden- aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes, & the paynyme were vnder the galowes, and were besy to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

¹ orig. boyal.

² g iiiij, back;

She urges them to lose no time, (2929)

The French arm themselves hastily, mount, and prepare to start. (2938)

Roland warns his companions to keep together, (2944)

and to be ready, each to help the other. (2946)

Floripa brings out the sacred crown, (2960)

which the knights kiss, (2962)

and then pass out of the gates. (2966)

Guy is on the
point of being
hanged, (2972)

but Roland puts
the Saracens to
flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of
them.

The ambush
breaks out. (2989)

Roland charges
Cornyfer, (2996)

and slays him,
(3008)

and then rides to
the gallows, (3010)
unbinds Guy,

who takes the
arms and horse of
a Saracen. (3032)

The French are
hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes also, and a grete corde aboute hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to erye to the paynyme sayeng: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye ⁴ thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thynge wherof ye ⁵ shal repente." Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetuously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastily poursyewed that xx ⁸ of them ¹were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makynge a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of grete facyon, And began to erye: "ha! ye frensshe ¹² men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is Iuged by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterpryse a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche ¹⁶ angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his shielde daungerously; but after that he was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so ²⁰ puyssantly that he clefte hys heedoun to the body. and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto the galowes, and vnblynfelde & vnbonde syr guye of bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was ²⁴ armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym, Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce, he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynyme ²⁸ hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete Payne and meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba²rons of fraunce, and dy² grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by ³² thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement & of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and puyssauence, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns.

¹ g iiii, back, col. 2.

² g v.

to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were empesshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of bourgoyne dyd meruaylles : for after that he was 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns : "O ye traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney that I am escaped fro your bandes." & by thus fyght-

Guy performs
marvellous feats.

The Saracens be-
gin to give way.
(3041)

8 yng' they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng, on that other syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to empesshe them the passage, that they mynt not wyth-

12 drawe them. Wherfore Rolland, holdyng durandal in hys honde, seeyng that, calle^d al hys felowes and sayd to them : " lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs, but of necessytye we must auance vs for our owne con-

Roland calls on
his companions to
make an effort to
gain the bridge,
(3052)

16 seruacyon : yf we may gete the brydge, doubtle we no thyng, & thenne may we wel saue vs." " Roulland,"

but Guy reminds
him that they
have no pro-
visions, (3055)

Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, " Ye knowe wel that in the toure we haue noo thyng to ete, & yf we were ¹wythin, 20 how shold we lyue ? yet had I leuer to haue my body daungerously wounded in fyghtyng vpon the sarasyns, than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day

and says it is
better to die
fighting than be
starved. (3058)

24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng in

All the othes
agree. (3061)

28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is, Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof shie was moche Ioyous, and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold

Floripa from a
window cheers on
Guy. (3080)

32 plese hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the danoys sayd : " Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

The French make
a charge, and

scatter the Saracens as sparrows
before the hawk.
(3101)

Guy slays Ram-
pere.

Roland praises
his valour. (3109)

Floripas reminds
the knights that
they have no food.
(3116)

The Saracens are
driven back.
(3128)

The French meet
with 20 pack-
horses, laden with

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt and descomfyture of paynynms, that they eschewed & made them to flee tofore him as ¹the byrde tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attayned hym so harde on the somette of the heed, that he clefte hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherfore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12 hym : "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryȝt dere."

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16 pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged' and' foughten by the paynynms : ca. xvj

W han Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr damoyselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem hyely : "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24 damoysel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had wel spoken, and in tyme : "for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and therupon al the barons with one ²courage goon ageynst the 28 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche wyse þat they made them to voyde the place, & to wythdrawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they returned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which certeyn paynynms ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

¹ g v, back.

² g v, back, col. 2.

wyn, brede, and fleshe habundauntly. And anone they provisions, (3136)
 that ledde them were slain and put to deth, And thenne
 the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and
 4 so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the
 toure. & in the waye as they retorne, they fonde the
 body of basyn whyche had be slain the day byfore,
 which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the
 8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the
 brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge,
 and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were
 they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may
 12 wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he Balan is furious
 sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his
 subiectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he
 knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so
 16 habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente
¹dyd doo calle hys coundeyl, and demaunded brullant and calls a coun-
 of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other
 of hys counceyllours, sayeng^t to them : " My barons, ye
 20 knowe that these frensche men haue ryght euyl gouerned
 vs. They haue garnysshed^t the toure wyth brede, wyn,
 and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the
 knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for
 24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make
 to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssance is
 ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete
 thought and melancolye what we may best doo."

28 To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : "syr admyral, Sortibrant advises
 I coundeyl that euery man be armed, and in grete
 poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure
 & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a
 32 thousand^t trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan
 the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde
 that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure."
 Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :
¹ g vj.

which they drive
inside the gates
of the castle.

On their way they
take up the body
of Basyn. (3150)

and calls a coun-
cil, (3163)

to consider what
is to be done.

Sortibrant advises
him to frighten
the French by

blowing of trum-
pets, &c.

Bruillant says he "Sortybrant, frende ! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue not þat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde wyth blowyng & sownyng of horns. ¹Certeyn ye 4 haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is there wythin : the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble Rolland is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8 that who-someuer loyneth to hym, he putteth hym to deth : And there is the counte olyuer : knowe ye not of his grete fyersnes, whyche conquerd Kynge Fyerabras, the myghtyest of all the paynmys ? And I swere to 12 you by Mahoun that he is in theyr compayne. For I haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondyer, Gherard, whyche hath doon to vs grete dommage. Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another 16 fals olde olde knyght that named hym self Naymes, duc of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged. And other ther be whyche I haue not named. There ben 20 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland, the ²neuewe of charles, is of soo grete fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng, ne stroke ne 24 shottte that is gyuen hym : and doubt ye not, that, yf they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they shold chace vs oute of thys royame or they ³shold slee vs. And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28 he hath ryȝt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony thyng holpen vs." ¶ Of these wordes that brullant thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng angry, & sayd to 32 hym : "ye haue ryght euyl and folysshly spoken." and so sayeng, he wold haue smyton hym wyth hys staf, but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng :

¹ g vj, col. 2. ² orig. nenewe. ³ g vj, back.

for the French are
not likely to be so
easily frightened,
(3184)

for there are in
the castle Roland,

and Oliver,

and Gerard,

Terry,

Naymes,

Guy, and 5 others.

And if they were
all like Roland

they would soon
chase the whole
Saracen army out
of Spain. (3204)

Balan is enraged,

and tries to strike
him, (3211)

“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to
assayle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals
frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyeces.”

but Sortibrant
prevents him.
(3213)

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes,
trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to
make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns
were there assembled, that they helde þe space of a myle
8 longe aboue the toure. After, thadmyral made to come
a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named
Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with
couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,
12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men.

The Saracens are
assembled;
they cover a
square mile of
ground. (3221)

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the
fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men,
furious and ¹wode as lyons, came to the yates of the
16 toure, & the maydens also al armed, whyche with the
barons dyd so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught
and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouer-
threwe and fyl doun dede. For they were aboue on
20 hye, and threwe doun grete stones, darteres of yron, &
other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made con-
tynuel restyng.

By means of
engines they win
the outer defences
of the castle,

¶ How the toure was broken and' brente by
24 enchauntement, & the barons in grete
peryl of deth, and' restored' by assaulte
maad' on the Paynyns: capitulo xvij

but the French
drive them back.
(3230)

THe Paynyns perseueryng in thassault afore sayd,
28 Thenchauntour came tofore the admyral, and sayd
to hym: “Ryȝt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al
redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the
frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte,
32 & that I may haue somme to awyte on me.” And
whan they were alle redy as he had deuyshed, he sette
them rounde aboue the tour. And by hys crafte and

The engineer says
he has his engines
ready. (3250)

He sets the walls
of the castle on
fire. (3280)

The French are in
despair. (3284)

but Floripas bids
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-
paration extin-
guishes the fire.
(3292)

Balan swears
vengeance on his
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says
the French must
soon give in,

for they have no
more shot nor
stones. (3302)

By a furious
assault the Sar-
cens break down a
large part of the
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þe
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &
make fyre at vtteraunce,¹ wherfore the frensshe men
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no
moyen to sauе theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto
the tyme ye see more." And anone shie wente, & took 8
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre
artyfycally brente the stones. thus she made this
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencyon to 16
make hys doughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and
trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al newe, and
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20
quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And
thassaulte was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of darteres,
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the ²grete
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tombled doun to
the erthe. the barons of fraunce moche abasshed, sayd 28
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-
quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the
pryncipal of the castel falle doun. And they beyng in
grete thouȝt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32
dysmaye ye noo thyng! thys toure is stronge ynoch
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

¹ g vij.

² g vij, col. 2.

plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetche it, And as wel may we slee the paynyme therwyth, as wyth stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue,
 4 came to hyr wyth grete Ioye, & kyssed hyr moche amerously and swetelye. And after she wente & opened the toure and place where the tresour¹ was Innumerabla, and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the
 8 batylments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynyme, in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfytur. And more ouer the paynyme, seeyng the golde falle on them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessyd their
 12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concupyscence of that golde they faught and slewe ech other. Wherfore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &
 2 angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye
 16 wyth an hye voys : " O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innumerabla. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste, which I haue wyth grete payne³ & dylgence assembled,
 20 And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled me. but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
 24 Sortybrant answerd : " Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng ameruayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for he may nomore do ; they may wel take it fro hym, for he is a-slepe ; I byleue none other : for in tyme passed
 28 he hath wel watched & kepte it ; but those frenssh men ben so wyly theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym subtylly." Thadmyral beyng² al angry bycause the nyght came on repayred⁴ with his peple toward hys
 32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym ;

and advises them to use her futher's gold for missiles.
(3327)

The French do so,
(3334)

and the Saracens leave off the assault and fight amongst themselves for the gold. (3340)

Balan, alarmed and grieved for his treasure, causes his men to retire. (3348)

Sortybrant comforts him,

and says Mahoun must be asleep.

The Saracens retire to their camp.

¹ orig. tresour. ² g vij, bk. ³ orig. payue.

⁴ orig. And' repayred'.

Roland from a
window sees
Balan at supper,
(3358)

and proposes a
sortie. (3363)

They all arm and
start. (3364)

Balan sees them
coming, (3369)
and sends for
Espoulart, his
nephew, to meet
them. (3372)

Espoulart charges
Roland;

he is unhorsed,
(3386)

but is soon up
again.

Roland stuns him,
catches him up,
and carries him
away on his horse.
(3392)

Balan calls for a
rescue. (3397)

and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral
sytyng at the table through the wyndowe, and after
cam to the other barons and sayd to them : “¹my
lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4
hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde
hem wel at his ease. and me semeth it shold be grete
honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue² his
repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8
accorde, & hastely they armed them and put them in
poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng to the place
where the admiral was. but the admiral, whiche was
subtyl, apperceyued theyrfeat, and sente hastely for a 12
paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe.
And sayd to hym : “Espoulart, cosyn, peraduenture
the frensshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper,
Therfore depesshe the, and be redy anone, and doo so 16
that they be taken & destroyed.” and anone he was
redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came
ayenst the barons, holdyng in hys honde a dart of stèle.
And fyrst he encountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his 20
shelde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al
astonayed; but it came soo to passe that it touched not
hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland
came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24
he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was
so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, ³that moche
lyghtly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Rouland
came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28
wyse that the paynym wzyst not where he was. And as
he was fallyng doun of hys hors, Rolland moche puy-
sauntly caught hym, & layed hym thwart vpon hys hors,
and bare hym awaye. The admiral, seeyng thys, al in a 32
rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys
neuewe. but they wzyst not what to doo, For in de-
fendyng them many of them were slain and hurte

¹ g viij, back, col. 2.

² orig. lene.

³ g viij.

wythoufe nombre; wherfor of veray force the other
paynyme must retorne: & rolland cesse^d not to renne
tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons
4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shette the yates wel surely,
and had noo feare of ony empesshement.

but the French all
escape into the
castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the
second' book which conteyneth xvij chapy-
8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of
fraunce were socoured & the paynyme
confused'.

¶ Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for
12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'
Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye
was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

¶ The peres of fraunce beyng^t thus assyeged and
16 deteyned^d, as I haue said afore, had^t taken a turke
muche fyers, and grete frende of the admiral,
whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it
20 plesed^d hyr: & they demaunded^d of hyr what man he
was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone
of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche
& hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete
24 dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc
Naymes moche wyse sayd^d to hyr: "Madame, it is not
behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man
of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we
been the more Ioyous. and I shal say to you wher-

28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-
myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred
and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were
contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,
32 Rychard^d of Normandye called the other his felawes,
and sayd^d to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

They ask Floripas
who their prisoner
is. (3444)
She tells them he
is Balan's
nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes
to keep him to
exchange for any
of them which
might be taken.
(3452)

¹ g viij, col. 2.

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message. (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. (3459) Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. (3467)

enclosed in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may sauе our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold ⁴ conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rychard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For ⁸ there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns. for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape ¹² wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thynge, but that we lede the moost Ioyous ¹⁶ lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked & ²⁰ preyed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we ²⁴ shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyauance ² may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogyer ansuerd and sayd: ²⁸ "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my deuoyr." The ³² duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vncouenable for to goo thyder: for

whan the Paynyme shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."

4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold never consente thereto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rychard 8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suf- fysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valy- aunte. And yf it happene that in doyng thys message 12 I be taken & slain of the paynyme, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. ¹For whan he had 16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon, 20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he shold be free al his lyf, & many other thynges:" & thenne thus it was concluded that rychard shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to 24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in ony place, ne soiourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rychard promyssed it & 28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rychard, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knownen by 32 them in ony wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we be wel arm'd, and we shal goo out and make a cours

William and
Gerard offer to
go, (3471) as also
Guy, but Floripes
will not let him
go. (3477)

At last Richard
says he will go,
(3480)

to which they all
agree. (3499)

They consult how
he is to get away
unseen. (3509)

Roland suggests
that they should
make a sortie,

and distract the
attention of the
Saracens while

Richard steals
away in the other
direction. (3529)

The knights weep
over Richard's
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them
fear nothing,

for by God's grace
he will soon bring
succour.

Upon the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they shal be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs. Rychard shal departe & passe forth & leue ¹vs, & we shal remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4 whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shal mowe be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete moder, he shal sauе hym self, by suche manere, that in 8 shorte tyme we shal haue Ioye & consolacyon that we shal hastily goo out surely." Thys sayeng¹, the peres of fraunce, seyng¹ that thys thyng¹ was not yet achyeued¹ surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12 theyr affayre. The noble duc² rychard, seyng¹ his felowes wepyng¹ for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne doubt ye noo thyng¹ yf god gyue me the grace, to whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16 and thys contreye, and in especyal that I may fynde myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge³ of mantryble, I may wel ensure you that I shal bryngne you socours in suche wyse that by the grace of god ye shal sone be delyuerd." 20 The barons ansuerd to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and puyssance, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!" After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyȝt cam on, & eueryche of them went to hys repaire, vnto atte 24 morne for to begynne to complysse theyr enterpryse.

¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng¹, ranne after hym, the whyche was slain by the sayd² Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges: capitulo ij

But a great dis-
appointment was in
store for them.

G Rete gryef and annoye cam to þ^e peres of fraunce whan Rychard of Normandye shold departe for 32 to goo to kyng¹ charles. On the morne whan

¹ h i, col. 2. ² orig. dul. ³ orig. brydde. ⁴ h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold 4 yssue out. Wherfore by the space of ij monethes they coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day emonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntynge a lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the 8 bridge was forgoten, Thenne the barons armed them & mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the paynyme, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began 12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce, and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The 16 duc Rychard al in wepyng¹ commaun¹ded to god hys felawes, And secretely departed, and took hys waye at al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr lodgyng¹, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slain. and 20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc rychard, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the hoost; and in wepyng¹ they recommaunded hym swetely 24 to god many tymes. Rychard of Normandye thus rydyng¹ alone, had feare alwaye that he shold be assaylded. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habundantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly that he shold be 28 empesshied, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn 32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf," & blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperceyued

For in the morning they found the castle surrounded by Saracens, (3540) so that for two months they had no chance of going out. (3459)

At last an occasion offers, and they sally out, (3567) and attack the Saracens.

While they are thus engaged Richard steals off. (3580)

His horse breaks down. (3612)

In despair he prays to God for help,

and crosses himself.

Brullant and Sor-
 tibrant see him,
 (3628) hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were
 bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastily to Kynge
 Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral,
 and tell Clarion, and brullant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4
 yonde messager,¹ one of the prisoners of fraunce, whyche
 is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for
 socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may
 come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounte theyr 8
 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne
 to vs grete dommage." Also sone as claryon herde
 these tydynge, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon
 hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, 12
 For for to renne xxx leghes he wold not be wery; &
 took hys sheld & his swerd of stelle square & sharpe,
 & ranne toward Duc Rychard as he had be enraged,
 & other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rychard mounted 16
 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed,
 & sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me
 consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty
 Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20
 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful
 and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful,"
 & thus as he was in this thouȝt he loked behynde hym,
 & sawe the sarasyns come hastily after hym, whyche 24
 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom
 the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the
 courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye.
 Neuer²theles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28
 byhelde the hoost of the paynyme came ageynst hym
 with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat
 his hert was. what thyng myȝt he thynk that they
 wold do wyth hym, & what tydynge his felawes shold 32
 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde &
 susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus
 ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

who mounts and
 rides after him.
 (3640)

followed by other
 Saracens. (3645)

Richard, looking
 round, sees
 the Saracens
 coming after him.
 (3653)

He is almost in
 despair.

vpon the sayd coursour, whyche ranne faster and more
 swyftlyer than a grehounde ; the whyche coursour was
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The tayle
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-
 what reyzed & dropped, as smal as of a partryche ; grete
 thydes & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eeres ;
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large & a white mane,
 ample ; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene & and green eyes.
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel ; &
 he was sadled with a sadle of yuorye, & the raynes of
 12 þe brydle entrelaced with gold ; styropes of fyn gold ;
 the poyntral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrded with
 iiiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of His breast piece
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng moche melodyously. is hung with little
 gold bells.
 16 & þe paynym ¹smote hym with the spores moche
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more
 than xxx foot longe. And after escryed duc Rychard
 the noble knyght, sayeng wyth an hye voys : “ by
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer Clarion calls on
 achyeue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng ony Richard to sur-
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf.” whan rychard
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued
 24 & chaunged, & ansuerd : “ Sarasyn, wherfore arte thou Richard asks him
 of suche entencion ayenst me ? What haue I trespassed
 to the ? I neuer offended the, ne robbed thy tresour.
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not ; and
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-
 warded to the by me.” The paynym answerd : “ cer-
 tayn, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye ; & of
 32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng for the. I shal Clarion declares
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world.” he will have his
 Also sone as Rychard knewe hys entencyon, he auaunced
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rychard, & wyth

¹ h ij, back.

Clarion cuts at
Richard, but does
him no harm.
(3688)

Richard smites
Clarion on the
neck, and cuts his
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's
horse, (3705)

and lets his own
go, bidding it an
affectionate fare-
well. (3713)

The Saracens
coming up try to
catch Richard's
horse, but in vain.
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys sheldē ; but it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym, by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys ¹swerde which 4 was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym, lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the necke so ryȝt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in suchे wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8 spere lengthe, & he put þe trunke of the body to the erthe al dede ; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors, & mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym, whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12 Rycharde myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel pourueyed of an hors ; For he was so myghty, that yf he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold not haue swette a droppe of water ; & for to swymme & 16 passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen hors by moche good affection : " O gentyl hors doulstyn, for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20 to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen that he drawe þe in to suchē a waye that þou mayst come in to the hondes of crystēn men & serue them. in many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24 serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apperteyneth to me I thanke the gretely." & here vpon he wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sara- 28 syns that followed after, came ²& fonde the kyng Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were so surpryzed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude doo none other thynge but fyrist to renne for to take Richards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32 proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad grete deffence, & took hys waye reuynyng for to retorne to the place that he was departed fro.

¹ h ij, back, col. 2.

² h ij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh
thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &
knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo
4 moche that they thought that duc Rychard'
had' been deed'; & how the brydge of
Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

8 **R**ychard of Normandye wylth his swerde in hys
fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne
after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of
whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &
the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte
The Saracens find
Clarion's body,
and lament over
him. (3724)

12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the
sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyted and
slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not
reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that ¹ sawe the hors

16 come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,
sone of kyng grehier, & also sortybrant of conymbres,
& sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel
aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my
20 neuewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the
Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors
that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that
Balan sees Rich-
ard's horse run-
ning loose, (3740)

24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that
they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &
cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in
whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan
He orders the
hors to be
caught, (3744)

28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was
longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued,
and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;
and after that the yate was shette, they arenged them
The knights admit
him inside the
gates,

32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng
pyetously. ¶ And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:
and lament over
Richard's death.

¹ h iij ool. 2.

They are all in
great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none 4 helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these ¹wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them: "Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng⁸ and sorowe: we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rychard ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brouȝt the body of kyng¹² Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng¹ in the ethroclytes in hys entendement, cryed and sayd: "and how is it? is myn neuewe in good¹ poynte?"

but Floripas com-
forts them. (3763)

The Saracens re-
turn bearing the
body of Clarion.
(3775)

Balan swoons on
hearing of his
nephew's death.
(3785)

There is great
grief over Clarion.
(3792)

Floripas explains
to the knights
what has hap-
pened. (3800)

The sarasyns ansuerd: "Syr admyral, we may not lye 16 to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl doun to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than iiiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- 20 syns was a grete wepyng¹, & made grete sorowe. The sarasyns thus makyngh thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she 24 knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland: "Syr, knowe ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is trouth that Rychard your messager² hath slayn the 28 kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whomi is none lyke ne parelle of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & 32 here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously: "O my felawe of

¹ h iij, back.

² h iij, back, col. 2.

armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynge
that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am
as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though
4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blesyd be
richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and
semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that
richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to
8 hym named Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary
hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,
which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble : "I charge
the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to
12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the
messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the
whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and en-
noyance, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by
16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on
that other parte the ¹messager of the frensshe men
goeth thyder, and yf he recounte his message to Charles,
it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-
20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that
noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf
he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make
hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages
24 the messager, "I shal do your commaundemente; and
I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as
that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an
hondred leghes contynuelly, I shal neuer be wery."
28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromedary,
& taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake
to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the
that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou
32 suffredest the frensshi men to passe ouer the brydge,
whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be
lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon
the goddes, with floripes his douȝter, and haue slain

Balan sends a
message to Galafre,
the bridge-
ward of Mantrible,
(3825)

that he is to allow
no one to pass the
bridge,
on pain of death.
(3845)

Orages starts on a
dromedary.

He arrives at
Mantrible and
delivers his
message, (3869)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmyral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is thys: After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, 4 vnto Charles theyr ¹kyng; the whyche hath slayne kyng Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not conne fynde the manere to sauе thy lyf, but that thou 8 shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was perturbed and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and 12 had smyton the messenger yf it had not be letted by them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he assembled many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16 xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed the brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to recountrue þe messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20 ture they myȝt fynde hym.

¶ How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofore hym: [ca.] iiiij 24

Richard is in great doubt how to pass Mantrible.

RYchard of Normandye, messenger of the frenssh barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by ²hym self myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28 in rydyng he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the contree couerd wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng them he was sore troubled in hys mynde, [&] began to crye: "O Ihesus, kyng of glorye, at thys tyme be thou 32 kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

He sees the Saracens covering all the country,

and begins to pray for help. (3304)

¹ h iiiij, col. 2.

² h iiiij, back.

see wel the declyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,
 I shal haue my hede smyton of ; and yf I entre in to
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force
 retorne to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed¹ faythfully
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherfore,
 8 my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy
 wylle be fulfylled and doon of me. thou knowest myn
 entencion : after the same gourerne me !” he beyng² nyghe
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng³ to
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auaunce⁴
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed⁵ wyth an hyghe
 voys : “ O messager, what someuer thou be, thynke for
 to dye ! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre ; now is þe⁶ houre
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged.”

These wordes so herde of rycharde were ²not to hym
 ouer playsaunt ; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng⁷ a swerde in
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquerd of
 Claryon : and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced⁸ thorugh the
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl doun to therthe al
 24 deed⁹ ; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,
 and rored¹⁰ lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-
 maunded¹¹ hym self to our lord, that he shold¹² preserue
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd¹³ hys message to the
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer
 leueth hys seruauntes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard¹⁴
 of Normandye beyng¹⁵ in thys medytacyon and thought

By the tyme he
 gets near the
 river the Saracens
 are close upon
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on
 him to turn and
 fight. (3929)

Richard turns and
 kills him, (3932)

and takes his
 horse.
 He rides to the
 bank of Flagot,
 which runs like a
 bolt from a cross-
 bow.

He commands
 himself to God.
 (3949)

¹ orig. promysed'. ² h iiiij, back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-white hart, which goes before Richard. (3955)

The water rises till it is level with the banks. The hart enters the river,

and Richard follows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare not follow him.

The river sinks to its usual level.

Galafre lets down the draw-bridge. (3976)

Richard is now safe,

and rides on slowly.

for to passe ouer, god sente a whyte herte which passed tofore rychard: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4 And the ryuer began to aryse ¹soo hye that it flowed ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water; and Rychard loked behynde hym, & sawe many sara-syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; 8 and thenne he recommaunded hym to god wyth good hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body, hauyng in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he myȝt perseuere fro dredre in suche wyse that he myght 12 passe ouer the ryuere; and soo toke the water & folowed the hert. The paynyns seyng that, were al abasshed and troubled, and there was not one that durst folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed, and 16 returned in to hys former estate and beyng. Thenne the paynyns made grete duel and sorowe by cause they myȝt not haue the messager. ¶ Galafre, whyche that was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20 and aualed the chaynes, and commanded the paynyns, vpon payne of deth, that they shold not cesse tyl that rychard were taken, or ellis they shold be all in the Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and in daunger to be loste. 24 Rychard of Normandye came ouer in good poynte, and deuoutelye thanked god of the grace that he had sente to hym, and descended fro hys hors for to vngyrde and lose hys sadle. ² And after resengled hym, and took his 28 hors and rode forth at hys ease, and ladde that other hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore, For in shorte tyme he supposed to fynde thexcersyte of kyng Charles. The paynyns seeyng thys, retourned 32 soroufully, & wente to vnarme them, For other thynge coude they not do.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;
4 & other maters : capitulo

v

IN as moche as rychard rode, whyche was moche
wery ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng
that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and
many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of
12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : "lordes and frendes, I am
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-
parent, whyche is of my specyal barons, whyche were
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that
16 ¹no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd
I despysye my self. Thenne by more strenger reason
the other ought more to despysye me. And I you en-
20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !

Meanwhile,
Charles is in great
trouble about his
knights. (4004)

He calls his
barons,

tells them his
trouble,

For I depose my self from hens forth." Ganellon was
there which was Ioyeful, what someuer semblaunt he
24 made, and sayd : "syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I
shal gyue to you good cunceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde
that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, &
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,
28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admiral is of grete
fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymeys &

and declares his
intention of re-
signing the crown.
(4015)

Ganelon advises
him to give orders
for a return home,
(4025)

32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that
Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad crysten,
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

for Balan is too
strong for them,

now that the
douzeperes are
dead.

In time, he says,
their children will
be grown up,
and then Charles
can return and
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons
for grief.

He mourns over
his disgrace.
(4054)

He asks his barons
for their opinions.
(4069)

All Ganelon's
friends support
his advice, (4081)

and declare they
will go no further
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure
you: Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there
many of our chyldren and parents that shal wexe grete;
and or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And 4
thenne they with vs ¹shal come in to spayne, for to con-
queste the londes and seygnouryes that we haue enter-
prysed, And shal recouure the holy relyques, of whome
I haue grete pyte. And more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys
melancolye; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun² in a 12
swoune, And spake not the space of a grete houre; and
in wepyng bytterly he sayd to hym self: ¶ "O poure
caytyf and vnhappy, what shalt thou do? yf thou re-
torne, þou shalt be dyshonoured. yet were it better to 16
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he
was comen to hymself, he sayd to hys barons that were
there: "Loo! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20
wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which
ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me,
but I shal be shamed, and wyth good ryght." Machayre,
aulbery, and geffroy, and other, moo than an hondred, 24
whiche al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd
alle wyth one consente: "Syr emperor, purpose ³ye
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd, For he 28
hath spoken wysely; and therfor conclude ye to retorne
in to fraunce wythout gooyng ony ferther on. we ben
xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyder that, for ony
thyng that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. 32
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr
comforde, & hym that was chyef of the conseruacion of
their personnes." Charles, al heuy, answerd: "O god of

¹ h v, back, col. 2.

² orig. donn.

³ h vj.

heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and 4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but lytel, I see wel." Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer, aroos vp and sayd: ¶ "O Emperour, yf thou byleue 8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted & brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage, they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly." Thenne they

Rayner warns
Charles not to
trust Ganelon or
his friends. (4096)

12 that were of the partie of the traytres cam forth and sayd: "Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng¹ is present, ye shold² lose your hede and it shold² be 16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought."

Ganelon's friends
abuse Rayner,
(4103)

¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but 20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche wyse that he ouerthrew to grounde; and there were made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that yf the kyng¹ had² not be present, and made the pees and 24 tranquylte, they had slain eche other. For anone there

who knocks
Alorys down.
(4117)

were moo than a thousand¹ of the lygnage of ganellon. But fyerabras, which was present, blamed them strongly; And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne

A great disturb-
ance ensues,

28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or fyght, that he shold² do hym be hanged² as a theef attaynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys they were aferde for to offend, and was nomore spoken.

32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge them, that they shold² put Reyner to deth as sone as they shold² be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to come to hym, and said to them: "ye haue done to me

which is quieted
by Fierabras and
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party
vow vengeance
against Rayner.

¹ h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders
Alorys to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.
(4149)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Alwaye nedes must the kynge be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory ¹on hys knees cryed duc Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of kyng charles; & thus they maad the pees. And after themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he torned backe that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd:

Geoffrey d'Haute-
ville advises
Charles to follow
Ganelon's advice.
(4163)

"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thynge, wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel as ony persone of your compayne. ye knowe wel that I and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how that it be that he coundeylthe you to retorne, hath good ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere be passed, the chyldren that be now in fraunce shal be grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a compayne, that lyʒtely ye shal mowe conquerre spayn, and auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20

Charles gives way,

Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte bytterly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wylle retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24 And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the harnoys trussed, wherof ²the compayne of traytres were Ioyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, & in especyal Reyner, whych retorned withoute hys sone 28 Olyuer, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was hys hert, by cause he hath ³ loste al hys confort.

and orders the
retreat home to
France, (4189)

to the great grief
of Rayner and
others. (4195)

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

¹ h vj, back.

² h vj, back, col. 2.

³ orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce:
capitulo vj

4 **W**HAN charles was mounted on horsback, and in
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,
Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them with-
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr: he taryed sayeng:
“O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blamed. O Rolland,
how I haue loued you! may euer your vncle so longe
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged? God defende
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoone to
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had: ^{he swoons from} ^{Charles laaments}
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “Alas!” sayd Charles,
“Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral! wel am I cause of
al your perdyeyon!” In makyngh thys heuynes, the
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-
perour loked toward the eest, and from ferie he sawe
rychard come rydyng vpon an hors sore rennyng, and
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest
lordes of hys compayne, and made thoost to tarye and
goo no ferther forth. “I see,” sayd he, “yonder comyng
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and
ledeth on hys ryght syde a fayr courser, as me thynketh;
and he semeth by hys rydyng that he is Rychard of
normandye. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys
32 day he sende me tydylges of rolland and of the other
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost taryed,
and anoné came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

^{The army pre-}
^{pares to start}
^{home. (4227)}

^{Charles sees}
^{Richard coming,}
⁽⁴²²⁹⁾

^{and orders a halt.}
⁽⁴²⁵³⁾

^{He recognises}
^{Richard. (4247)}

moche gentilly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rychard
of normandye: "Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth
you? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of 4
myn other ¹barons? be ye come allone? be they alyue
or dede? telle me, I praye you." Rychard ansuerd:
"Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8

Charles enquires
of Richard how
Roland and the
others are. (4257)

Richard tells him
how they are
besieged by Balan,
(4265)

that they have
Floripas and the
sacred reliques,
(4271)

and have sent him
to beg Charles to
come to their
help. (4276)

The king is
pleased,

and says if they
can hold out for
six days he will
deliver them.
(4300)

in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyeged by ballant the
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16
curtoys daughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to sauе 20
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,
ye shal mowe conquerre the contreye of spayne, & other
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a 24
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne alowed in hys
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not
²but Rolland and hys felowes sholl haue dyed. "Now 28
gentyl Rychard," sayd the kyng, "is the toure in
whyche they been bysyeged, stronge & wel garnysshed
of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle? yf they may
holde vj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32
hys complyces." "Syr," answerd Rychard, "I shal
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude
Innumerale, the whyche holde the space of two myle.
the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is

Richard tells him
that the tower is
surrounded by the
Saracens,

and that he will
have to pass the
bridge of Mantri-
ble, (4309)

4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where
the passage is moche daungerous. and the walles of that
cyte ben made of marble cymented and fortifyed with
toures, and there renmeth a ryuer ryȝt hydous, whyche
8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,
& renmeth so fast and Brayeth, that there is noo bote ne
shyppe may passe theron. and the brydge is half a myle
longe, And in the myddes there is a toure¹ of marble
12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon; & the yate is
garnysshed & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked.

¶ The portyer that kepereth thys plase is a paynym hydous
and grete, massyf, stronge and ²felonnous, whyche bet-

which is kept by
a giant,

16 ter resembleth the deuyl than ony man or persone. he
is as blacke as pytche boylled, & hath x thousand
knyghtes in his compayne. wherfore I wote wel that by
force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may

as black as pitch,
with 10,000 men.
(4321)

20 be doon to them, they doubt not. And yf we passe
not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the
brydge; For by force we may noo thyng⁴ do. but it

He proposes a plan
by which they
may pass it by,
disguising some
knights as mer-
chants. (4343)

byhoueth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And
24 somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes; and

there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr
swerde vnder, And there shal come after vs grete som-

myers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al
28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that euery
man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue gotten

the fyrst gate, I shal soun & blowe myn horne, And
wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal haue

32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to
our entencyon." Thys councayl was wel approued by

Charles approves
of the plan. (4356)

the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blesseyd rychard by cause
he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple.

¹ orig. tonre.

² h vij, back, col. 2.

Five hundred
French knights
disguise themselves as
merchants, (4369)

and start on,

while the others
lie hid in a wood.
(4400)

The standardes were reyzed, and the loryflam dyscouerd.
Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And
wente & ¹bonde heye and grasse to-gydre, and made
trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4
chauntes. euery man wel arm'd vnder hys cloke, &
swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that
they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon-
dred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue to- 8
fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard
went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nauntes
folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner,
fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12
taryeng¹. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode
in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

¶ How by the moyen & counceyl of Rychard
of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16
strong brydge of mantryble was wonne,
not wythoute grete Payne; And what
maner man galafre was: capitulo .vij

Richard and his
party ride on,

driving the pack-
horses before
them. (4395)

His companions
are frightened at
the sight of the
river and the
strength of the
bridge. (4405)

THemperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20
abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of nor-
mandye, hoel of Nauntes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other
peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on
the waye to goo toward man²tryble, and ladde wyth 24
them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes
of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And
thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge
soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28
chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed.
For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the puyssance
of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they
aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de- 32
maunded of Rychard: “What may there be of this

place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men 4 of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst 8 yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynynms: & for ony thynge that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns 12 but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After ¹these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; 16 & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so 20 hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyllede pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote 24 longe, his eeres so grete that they myȝt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & crooked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued 28 hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confidence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the kepyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of 32 that contreye. And the sayd paynym was constable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessary that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knownen of hym. For yf there had ony be knownen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4413)

Galafre sees them coming. (4427)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4445)

¹ h vijj, back.

Galafre challenges
the French
knights. (4451)

Richard tells him
they are mer-
chants on their
way to the fairs,

and bearing pre-
sents to Balan.
(4456)

Galafre says that
twelve Frenchmen
had passed the
bridge without
paying toll, (4475)

as well as a
messenger,

who had slain his
cousin Claron,
(4487)

wherefore Balan
had ordered him
to let no one pass,

neuer none haue escaped¹ but he shold haue ben dede.
Thus, thenne, whan they were ¹at mantryble, Rychard
passed¹ afore, and whan he was at the entre of the gate,
Galafre came to hym & sayd: "vassal, what are ye? ⁴
wherfore come ye hyther?"

" Rychard, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage,
& began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte
whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- ⁸
chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl
goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we
goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at
Aygremore, we shold soiourne there, and gyue to thad- ¹²
myral somme precyous yeftes that we here brynge.
These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al
esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr,
we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what ¹⁶
waye we ought to goo." Galafre ansuerd: "knowe ye,
that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that
been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen
passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- ²⁰
sagers of the emperorour Charles, which yet owe to me
theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord
thadmeral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them
that other day escaped preuyly away as a theef, whiche ²⁴
rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & ²passed
ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn
the kyng^t Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye.
now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys ²⁸
brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely
wythout to haue ony mercy or pte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For
his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the ³²
paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he com-
maunded me thre tymes that I shold not suffre ony
personne, lord, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And that

¹ h viij, back, col. 2.

² i j.

I shold serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of
theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe
what ye be." Rychard heryng thys, bowed his hede :

unless he is
known. (4501)

4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and Reyner of genes
goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he
began to doubte, and sayd to them that there shold
nomoo entre, and auaunced hym and drewe vp the
8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche
he dred not, and sayd to them in grete fyerste : " ye are
ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-
maundemente, And therfor ye four shal be sette in
12 pryson, and the other that come after you also. And
to-morn I shal sende you prisoners ¹to my lord thad-
myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your
mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there
16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-
eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby
foure tymes aboute : " By god," sayd Ryol, " I may no
lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;
20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded!" And therwyth
he threwe of his cloke, and smote vpon the paynym; but
he was so strongly armed that he myght do hym no
harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rychard
24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and eche
of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre
vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed
ne the body they myght not hurt, For he was armed
28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and maylled.
¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and supposed for to haue
smyton Ryol, and enhaunced hys axe that was grete
and heuy and also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke
32 come, and was habylle, and lept a syde, and the stroke
smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a
marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted.

Raoul and two
others pass on to
the bridge. (4509)

Galafre raises the
bridge, (4514)

and calls on them
to surrender.
(4517)

Raoul strikes at
him,

and cuts off a piece
of his ear.

The others ent at
him, but cannot
hurt him. (4541)

Galafre cuts at
Raoul with his
axe, (4552)

but misses him.

“Ha! god^l of heuen!” sayd Reyner, “how he smyeth oultraceously!¹ I am al abasshed^l of the puyaunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquer ne gryeue.” He thus sayeng^l, he took a grete braunche of a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduyse^l and marked^l the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to therthe; & whan he was ouerthrown, he maad a crye so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyme of mantryble were moeued^l and assembled^l, that within a lytel whyle there were redy armes^l moo than x thousand.

Rayner knocks
Galafre down with
a branch of a tree.
(4563)

1000 Saracens
assemble. (4573)

12 there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Normandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed doun the drawe bridge, And thenne entred^l in v hondred knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth them; but at the entre of the gate the paynyme en- countered them: there was a grete medle and recounstre; many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there slayne and herte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned^l it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood^l it wel, whyche was in the wood^l aforesayd with al his puyaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly, and there was not one that cesse^l to renne tyl he came to the brydge. ²¶ Ganellon, whyche after was traytour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reyse^l; but the loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured^l not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe, by the playsyr of god^l.

Then he blows his
horn. (4575)

and Charles with
all his men come
up. (4587)

Ganelon in front.
(4589)

¶ How by force and' strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred' in to mantryble, after that
Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng' that

¹ i j, back.

² i j, back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym ;
and' many other maters : capitulo viij

4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people & In the fight at the
confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. gate of Mantrible

and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome Charles and
he attayned wyt hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must Ganelon bear
nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway them well. (4595)

8 by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel hys deuoyr. The
dyleies of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin
many were drowned. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore, Charles sees that
and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þe grounde, Galafre is not
12 which was not dede, and that seemed better a deuyl than dead,
a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys ¹axe in hys
honde, wyt whyche he had slayn thyrty frenssh men.
And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaundel to slee hym ; & and orders him to
so moche they smote at hym wyt axes and stones, that be slain. (4611)
they slewen hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete,
that fyue myle aboute was anone knownen that the
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerel ; wherfore
there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the 50,000 Saracens
cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh come to help those
men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and so of Mantrible,
24 stronge that it seemed a thyng Imposyble to conquerel (4639)
or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geaunt moche
fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte.
And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde,
and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe,
as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, &
helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf,
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyt hys voys
tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed : "Where is charles Ampheon challenges Charles,
the kyng of fraunce ? wyl he now bere wyt hys the (4669)

and threatens him. (4672)

relyques to Saynt Denys¹ by mahon, by the whyche I
comforde my self, it were better¹ for hym, olde dotard,
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-
tainly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer⁴
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &
hanged alle quycke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after
that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were⁸
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth
in hys courage, & sette hys shelde tofore hym, wyth hys¹²
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym
ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng¹ & he were
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym
soo myghtely that he clefte hym in two pyeces, & 16
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad hym falle
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherfore the
Sarasyns were all moeued and affrayed, And as people
enraged¹ smote vpon the Frensshe men with darteres,²⁰
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

Charles attacks Ampheon,
and with his sword cuts him in
two. (4686)

Charles calls for
help. (4693)
Richard and three
others join him,

and drive the
Saracens back
into the town.
(4699)

The Saracens
surround them.
(4703)

¶ And thenne Charles cryed¹ socours for to assemble
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rychard
of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and²⁴
Syr Ryol du mauns,² whyche alle had¹ courage lyke vnto
lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the pay-
nymeis to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche²⁸
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette
it, in makyng¹ grete defence with bowes and other shottie,
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,
which were wel, as thystorye maketh meneyon, fyue³²
thousand¹; but alle they conde not fynde the maner to
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept
ayenst the sarasyns by the frensshe men. There was

¹ i ij, col. 2.

² i ij, back.

grete bruyt in thys recountre; And though Charles doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of 4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland 8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer haue seen them.

Charles is almost in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, escryed and sayd : "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye 12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte doun these Turkes, and god shal ayde & ¹helpe vs. Ye knowe wel that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysed, and 16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs 20 auaunce vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys strengthe and the value of hys persone." Wyth these wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne, Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue 24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete slaughter of turkes and of Paynmys.

Richard encourages him, (4715)

and the five push forward into the town. (4725)

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns, 28 cryed "a larme and socours" moche hye and furiously.

Charles calls for assistance.
Ganelon hears him,

Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte; Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good; & came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the 32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth brondes and barres of yron and mortal shiotte, where as

and wishes to help him. (4729)

¹many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empesshed:

Alorys presses
Ganelon to retire,
and leave Charles
to his fate. (4739)

god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auenged of the contradicytions that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, & holde it wythout contradicyton,

12 Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarie." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorye forbede

that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryȝtful lord! we holde of hym al our londes & seygnouryes. I shold 16 be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon:

20 "ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we shal be aduenged on al our eȝnemyes. Ther-

fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne

that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were euyl contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them.

Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete 32 poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

but Ganelon is
faithful to Charles.
(4765)

Fierabras comes
up, and asks
where Charles is.
(4775)

¶ The Traytre ansuerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

dede now.' Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched⁴ of and calls on them to succour him. (4780)

4 treson wylt good⁴ ryght." And after bygan to crye "socours and⁴ ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng¹, to the belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganellon, that thenne 8 had⁴ lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he sawe that the brydge was not drawen up, And thenne he and Ganellon dyd⁴ gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre 12 in to the cyte. ¹And whan they were wythin, & the traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely theyr deuoyr, entred⁴ in a foot, & smote doun wyth the other comunelye. And grete habundance of blode 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynymeys cryed⁴ and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad- 20 myral that he shold⁴ socoure them, and cryed on mahon & Termagaunt that they wold⁴ come to theyr ayde; but for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put 24 and⁴ goodes, and destroyed⁴. Thus doyng¹, a messager departed⁴ secretye for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte and telle the tydylnges of theyr destractyons.

Fierabras and Ganellon fight nobly,

and the town is won. (4792)

The Saracens send to Balian for help. (4800)

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe 28 greued⁴ gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptysed of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix

W Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were 32 gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche² were

¹ i iij, back.

² i iij, back, col. 2.

troubled,—She was as blacke as pytche boylled: hyr eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: shē had a grete vysage & crooked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely affrayed of the deth of hyr husband, & also aferde for 4

^{Amyot the giant-}
ess rushes out,
armed with a
scythe,

and slays numbers
of the French.
(4820)

Charles shoots her
with a cross-bow.
(4832)

The town is
sacked. (4845)

Charles remains
at Mantrible three
days. (4841)

He finds the
children of the
giantes. Amyot,

whom he causes
to be baptised,
under the names
of Roland and
Oliver. (4865)

hyr ij sones, of whyche shē was late delyuered;—soo shē in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon the frensshe men so Impetuously that shē maad grete 8 dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel approche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl contente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse bowe. And whan it was bende, he shottte so ryght that 12 he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that shē fyl doun deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles, shē was smyton so wyth stones and other thynge, that 16 she never moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates of the towne and other defences were not kepte ne defended, but that Charles dyd his wylle of alle.

¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20 the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel refresshied of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded. For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place ¹was so stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24 kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he abode thre dayes in departyng ² & destroybutyng the goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28 And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot, In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of the fornamed geauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was wel Ioyous, and were baptysed; & one he named Roul- 32 land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

¹ i iiiij.

² orig. dapartyng.

themperour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge eyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgec-

4 tyon, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, Ryol of mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed bal-

Charles consults
as to whom he
shall leave in
charge of
Mantrible. (4875)

8 lant the admiral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rychard¹ answerd: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe þ^e brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand

By the advice of
Richard Howel
and Raoul are left
there with 5000
men. (4881)

12 men." ¹and lyke as Rychard¹ sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward

16 aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And¹ seeyng the

Charles, seeing
the magnitude of
his forces, thanks
God. (4907)

20 multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of thyss people, wthy ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynge

24 and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssance sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente."

After that he had sayd thus, he blesseyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the

28 sayd Emperour had in hys compayne an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng, And¹ the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrtene contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rychard of normandye was in the auante garde,

He has 100,000
men.

32 And¹ the Duke Reyner² in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slain, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted, ³ wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Balan is told of
the death of
Galafre, and the
capture of
Mantrible. (4923)

¹ i iiiij, col. 2.

² orig. Reyuer.

³ i iiiij, bk.

In great grief and
rage he curses
Mahoun. (4927)

and smashes his
image. (4939)

Sortibrant advises
him to repent and
humble himself
before his gods,
(4943)

and to send out
spies to see if
Charles is coming.
(4945)

Balan is per-
suaded and
repents. (4963)

man fro hym self, sayeng^t: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy power is nought. O cursyd god & recreaunte, thou art nothyng^t worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and^t hast 4 consented to my dyshonour, as I now wel see, whych ouȝtest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayeng^t, the admiral took a clubbe with his two handes, & ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8 soo grete a stroke vpon the heed^t, that he fyl doun, & was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynyns were not wel abused^t, they myght knowe clerely theyr Infydelyte and fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages 12 that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and^t haue no consolacion. A lytel vnderstondyng and lacke of wytte, & also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a thynge made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16 Sortybrant of Conymbres, seyng^t the desolacyon of thadmyral, cunceyld hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enclyne to do to 20 hym obeyssance, Seeyng^t that Charles hath wonne by his puyssance my cyte and stronge tour ¹ of mantryble, where as I had^t my laste conforte to kepe me moost sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And^t yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And^t yf ye may, late hym be taken, and^t hange hys people, or brenne them, 28 without ony mercy or pyte. And^t thenne after ye may caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and smyte of the heed^t of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth them." Whan the admiral ballant had herde Sorty- 32 brant, consyderyng^t hys affectyon, humbly he retorneid to mahon, purposyng^t to do as he had^t sayd.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assayld'
more strongly than euer they were, And'
the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-
forted' by the holy relyques, by them
adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayed^d soo moche thadmyral, & with
hym the olde kyng^t Coldroe tempested^d hym, &
brullant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had^d
doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold^d make amendes.
The admyral beyng content for their ¹affectyon, sware
that he shold^d encrease Mahon, and Augment of a thou-
sand weyȝt, after their custome, of s yn gold^d and other
precyosytees. And anone dyd^d do sowne trompettes
and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were
assembled sarasyus Innumerable, al armed^d. And the
admyral maad^d to bryng hys engynes for to throwe
grete stones at the tour, for to bryng it doun, and also
for to destroye the frensshe men & hys doughter. And
thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for
tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes thereto ; wyth
whych the paynyms made fyue grete hooles in the
toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his
ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland^d, wyth
theyr shieldes tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr
hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not
soo hardy emonge them but that they were abasshed^d,
not wythstondyng^t they had^d good^d wylle to defende
them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with
stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he
dyd^d them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng^t, thad-
myral cryed : "O my fiendes and^d subgettis, doo your
deuoyr to bryng to the erth thys toure ; For yf ye so
do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles
himself before his
gods,
and promises
them gifts. (4965)

He orders batter-
ing-engines to be
brought up
against the tower.
(4979)

Five great
breaches are
made in the wall.
(4987)

Roland and
Oliver defend the
tower well.
(4991)

Balan threatens his daughter.

¹make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a brennyng fyre, for she hath wel deserued it, doyng to me the dyshonour that euery man knoweth." ¶ After these wordes the paynyme were more feruent than they ⁴ had ben tofore, & surmounted by strengthe, scaled the toure, and mounted vp, and entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þe last stage that was. Rolland seyng thys, sayd to them:

The Saracens swarm in at the breaches. (5011)

Roland cheers on the French knights.

"lordes & brethern! in thonour of god our maker, late vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe thys day, but that we shal be surpryzed, taken, and deafeated." "Brother & felowe," sayd ¹² Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal please our creatour, & we been al good fyghtars. In

Oliver proposes a sally. (5020)

the name of God, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to assayle our enemyes. I had leuer to dye there withoute, ¹⁶ and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth dyshonour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd semblably. Florypes, seeyng thys, was al abasshed, and demaunded the barons yf they wold goo out for to ²⁰

Floripa encourages them. (5039)

goo assayle the paynyme, & sayd to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour & of good partie, I praye to god that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I promyse you ²yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I ²⁴ shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be Ioyeful."

and they drive the Saracens back,

wyth tho wordes³ the barons goo smyte and hewe doun the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede & hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote ²⁸ them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anone as they had gotten thoo holes, they stopped them & faste enclosed them. and after florypes axed fyrist of naymes

and stop up the breaches.

³² duc of bauyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and sayd: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promyseid me, and sware, that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I

¹ i v, col. 2.

² i v, back.

³ orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I haue long kept." The barons heryng thys, wepte for 4 Ioye, & sworen to hyr that they shold do no thynge to hyr, but al loyalte and trouthe. Florypes wente thenne and fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and tofore them she opened it; & assone as the relyques were taken 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripa brings out the sacred relics. (5045)

Thenne the barons kneled doun to the erthe, deuoutely smytyng them self on their brestes by con-12 tryeyon of hert. Duc Naymes ¹ of bauyere was the fyrst that kyssed them wyth grete reurence, & the other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the paynyme were mounted on hye. And assone as they 16 sawe them, they tombled doun to þe grounde, dede, & al to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O lord god of glorie, whyche mayst do al thynge, I thanke the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see 20 wel and knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we haue ofte spoken." And Incontynent he took hardynes and courage, and after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern, now we be recomforted, so that we shal neuer fere ne 24 doubte paynyme ne sarasyns." And after, Florypes remysed the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thadmyral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dough- 28 ter wyth them; & he, ful of a fals entencyon, escryed hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold be vnder- stonden: "O florypes, fayr daughter, I see wel where thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted the, & ful of folysshe coundeyl was he that put in thy 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst prynsers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal ²not endure

which the knights kiss with great reverence. (5052)

At the sight of the reliques the Saracens fall down dead from the walls. (5065)

Balan sees his daughter at a window and abuses and threatens her. (5088)

¹ i v, back, col. 2.

² i vj.

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4
made a sygne as though she had menaced h̄yr fader;
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to
gadre hys peple, and comaundered to shote & lose the
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrownen to therthe.
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynyme, whyche were
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynyme: Olyuer
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20
hys courage, that for sorowe he tombled doun as a dede
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete ¹desolacyon for
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24
he shal euer be my frende & specyal byloued, þat wyl
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete Payne to recomforte
hym, sayeng that in shiort tyme he shold be auenged 28
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than
xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admiral, "thou
hast wel forgoten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32
the day that þou haddest grete puysaunce." ¶ Sorty-
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

Floripa threatens
him with a stick.
(5093)

The Saracens
make a furious
assault and a
great part of the
wall is broken
down. (5101)

The French use
the Saracen idols
as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons
with rage, (5117)

and again abuses
his gods. (5123)

Sortybrant
reproves him,
(5127)

there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good a god :
he gyueth vs plente¹ of whete, of wyn, and of other
goodes also ; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought

4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye
smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better
aduysed, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto
you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Vpon these

and begs him to
have patience.

8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl
entrede in to hym, whyche sayd in thys manere after
that he had adoured hym : "Admyral, ryche lord, ne

A false devil,
under the form of
Mahon,

12 hornes, ²and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the
toure ; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe
men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyced,
and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette

urges Balan to
renew the
assault,
promising him
success. (5140)

16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maad grete shott
ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and
almoost al ouerthrownen. The peres of Fraunce seyng
thys, had grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout

Balan is delighted,
and orders his
men up again.
(5147)

20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd to hys
felawes : "O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fy-
delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late

The French are
almost in despair,

24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse.
ye see now þat the tour gooth to grounde, And almoost
these sarasyns be medled wyth vs. But as touchyng
to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule

but are comforted
by Ogier, (5171)

28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssance to
holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so
grete a dyscomfyture of these paynynms, that euery man
shal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde

32 durandal ; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-
helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe
and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the
saracyns, and there dyd suche dylgencie, that alle-

and they drive
the Saracens
back again.
(5180)

¹ orig. pleute. ² i vj, back. ³ i vj, back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-
yng^t theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to
hem, and^t also remembryng^t the menaces of hyr fader 4
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted^t hyr
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al shē was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges
of^t thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; 8
and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously,
which allone was sente to the admyral, and'
what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

THe Frensshe men beyng^t in thys contynuel payn 12
of bataylle for to defende þe toure, Duc Naymes of
bauyere went vp on hye, and^t sawe oute of a wyndowe,
& sawe bynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,
whyche was brought hastily, & after, a grete companye 16
of men of armes: And^t thought in hym self that they
came for to socour and^t ayde them. and^t anone sent
for hys felawes for to come & see them. Assone as
Florypes vnderstood^t it, shē came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20
sayeng: "O gloryous² vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,
worshypped^t mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue
herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere
loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and^t kysse 24
me." Of the Ioye of Florypes, were Ioyeful the erles
and^t lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-
forted whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin
was the dragon wel fygured. Grete Ioye and grete 28
consolacion was emonge them, & they had^t cause, seen
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam
to thadmyral, & sayd to hym, that Charles wyth an
hondred thousand^t men of armes came makyn^t grete 32
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe cunceyld^t anone that

Naymes from a
window sees
Charles and his
army coming.
(5207)

Floripas thanks
God for the news,
(5223)

and they all-
rejoice.

A messenger
tells Balan that
the French army
is coming. (5231)

euery man shold be armed, and that they shold goo
mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl
was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-

4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assemبلed in
grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Josue, to
thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore.

He sends 50,000
men to meet
them.

Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandye wyth hys con-
8 fanon reyseg vp, whyche came al afore: and alle
taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr
horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was
nyghe. And wythoute makyng lodgyses or other

The French
bivouac for the
night. (5251)

12 thynge, they ¹there rested them al nyght, For theyr
tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the
Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good
araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-

16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou
knowest that I haue dōo the be baptysed, wherfore I
loue the the better. yf thou myȝtest pourchace and
make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon

In the morning
Charles tells
Fierabras that if
Balan will be
baptised he shall
keep all his
kingdom. (5263)

20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and
Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes
I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I
promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf

24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre,
for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-
bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym,
yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content.

Fierabras advises
Charles to send a
messenger to his
father. (5275)

28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne
haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye."

Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of
Normandye, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and

32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost pro-
pyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall?

By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he
wold, fcr to recounte & speke hooly thys ²message. I

Charles proposes
to send Ganelon.
(5283)

¹ i vij, col. 2.

² i vij, back.

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye

Richard approves of this,

wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rychard

answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4

and Charles sends for Ganelon

message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to

and gives him his instructions. (5291)

hym : " My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say

to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed & renye

mahan, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8

that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-

ferd for al humayn creatures ; & after, that he yelde to

me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryon, &

also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12

hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys

contreye & hys landes : & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we

shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym

no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16

Ganelon arms himself, and starts. (5307)

allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted

vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke

his shelde, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went

in to the vale of Iosue hastily. and anone he was 20

taken of the turkes that kept the passage ; but whan

they knewe that he was a messager for to speke to

thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo,

He rides up to Balan's tent, (5322)

& he taryed¹ not tyl that he came tofore thabytacyon of 24

thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly

countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete

valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral

knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28

and delivers his message to the Sultan, (5325)

Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere : " Sar-

syn, take hede & vnderstonde me : I am a messager of

the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty

Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32

renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dy-

abolyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al

the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

¹ i vij, back, col. 2.

deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the¹ crosse, for to redeme al the world. & yf thou so do, thou art assured not onely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy 4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou wylt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art deffyed, & al thy people.

calling on him to become Christian on pain of death.
(5337)

8 & yf thou wylt sauе thy self, thynke to flee and wyth-drawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth, and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,

12 & after, he shal gyue thy royme and thy rychesse to his² seruauntes. Therfore aduyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for

Balan, in a rage, threatens him with a stick.
(5343)

16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente

20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt neuer recounte to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a

Ganelon draws his sword and cuts down Bruillant. (5338)

24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche seyng that, escryed moche stronglye tauenge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty

Balan calls on his men to seize Ganellon, but he rides off and escapes.
(5360)

28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, & demaunded Rolland

32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that he was crysten, and by presumyng made emonge them they Iudged that it was Ganellon that had spoken to thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

The knights in the tower recognize him.
(5371)

¹ orig. ithe.

² i viij.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte ¹ hym grace to
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf
he come not to his good² desyre." ¶ The other barons
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4
Ganellon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of
a montayne, and there he tornek hym ayenst the
Paynyme, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of
the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8
named³ murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned⁴ the
paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste:
And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of
kyng⁵ Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hysfeat, and sayd 12
to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys
baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And
wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saeu you &
charles, I loue none better. Now wold⁶ god that I 16
were in hys compayne, I shold⁷ make grete marterdom
on these Paynyme." Neuertheles he was strongly
chaced⁸ of the paynyme. But whan they sawe the
hoost of Charles, they retorneled aback, and wente & 20
tolde the assayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo
than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore
they coundeylled that euery man shold arme hym, &
that coundeyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24
²knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an
Innumerable compayne of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in
menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencyon
was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28
come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperor ordeyned' ten
bataylles, and how they dyd' & were
recountred' of the puyssaunce of the 32
admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-
uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

¹ i viij, col. 2.

² i viij, back.

Ganelon turns on
his pursuers,

and slays two of
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this
feat,

and wishes he
were with him.
(5395)

The Saracens
pursue Ganelon

till they see the
army of Charles.

W

Han Ganellon was comen to kyng Charles,
thumperour ordeyned x bataylles after that

4 Ganellon had tolde hys message, whyche was suchē :

“ Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth
you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was
wel happy that I escaped, For I haue been chacedē

Ganelon reports
the result of the
message to
Charles, (5439)

8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold
haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr
kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.

And anone they sowned horns and trumpettes, & was

12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-
land herde the sowne, and the voys of ¹the frensshe
hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced &
made good chyere. whan the ij hoostes recounted, al

who divides his
army into 10
divisions, and
prepares for
battle. (5453)

16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of
them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made
ten bataylles : In the fyrst, he ordeyned Rychard of
Normandye ; Duc Reyner of genes had the second,

Richard leads the
vanguard, (5455)

20 Ganellon the thyrd, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the
fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seventh, Amangius
the viij, Sampson the ix, And of the tenth was con-
duytour charles the kyng. & in eche bataylle were x

and Charles
himself the rear.
(5457)

24 thousand men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan

Ballant the admiral sawe the kyng comyng, he sayd
to brullant, “ who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in
to bataylle with an hondred thousand paynynms ; ”

Balan bids
Brullant to attack
the French first
with 100,000 men.
(5459)

28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them

ne fyerasbras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes.

& vpon thys poynete the warre was open, & Brullant
began to goo a grete bowedraȝt tofore the other, and

Bruillant rides out
and challenges
Charles. (5471)

32 began to crye “ haro ! haro ! where is charles themper-

our wyth his euyl chere ? loo ! I come to the ! thou

hast enterprysed a grete folye whan thou passest the

see, & ouer late thou shal repente the. On thys day

Charles charges
at him,

and slays him,
(5485)

and afterwards
many more of the
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a
Saracen king,
makes great
havoc amongst
the French,
(5523)

but is himself
slain by Richard.

The French force
the pass,
and approach
Balan's division.
(5563)

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf.
And ¹wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thad-
myral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Them-
perour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a furye ⁴
he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, &
attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake,
and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym
tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a ⁸
turke kynge of pyetrelee, and smote hym in the breste
that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was
broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd;
for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At ¹²
that tyme he bare hym meruaylously, that one of the
hoostes medlef eche wyth other in suche wyse that
there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that
were lyuyng were lette by them that were dede. ¹⁶
Thenne emonge the paynmys there was a turke, named
Tenebres, which cam makynge grete bruyt vpon the
frensshe men, and attayned fyrist the noble Iehan of
pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & ²⁰
smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the
erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth
huon, and guernyer thauncyen, and after sayd to the
frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub- ²⁴
gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of ²Normandye
had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, &
attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his haw-
berke, and brake his shelde in quarters, & so smote ²⁸
hym, that he fyl doun deed wythout ony more reproach-
yng & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of
strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and
fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssance, whyche ³²
was accompanied wyth iiiij kynges crowned, & wyth
an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote.
Anone a messenger came to the admiral, & tolde hym

¹ k j.

² k j, col. 2.

how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys compayne. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe, & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost specyal 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles the kyng. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone; & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consyderyng thatstate of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng hym.

Balan determines to seek out and engage Charles in single combat.

¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men: capitulo xijj

20 **B**allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel arm'd, and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete of body, well membrede, & haþt hys berde hangyng to 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do sowne hys trompettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, & made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shōte wyth bowes turquoys, & al furiously that one ayenst 28 the other goo shōte, and make mortal warre, so that the shōtte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche people was there slayn that the wayes were empesshed & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke without faynyng, that hys shēlde auayllede hym not; hys

A general engagement ensues.

and the slaughter is immense.
(5516)

Reyner attacks and slays Sortybrant.

Balan grieves
over the death of
Sortibrant.

He charges into
the French,

and slays Huon of
Milan and 20
others. (5574)

Ganelon and his
friends make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued
by Ganelon.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there
deed lyke a beest ; & after, wyth hys swerde made so
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, þat it was 4
¹meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of
Sortibrant, wheroft he was almoost oute of hys wytte
in a rage, and sythe sayd : " O Sortibrant, my special
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8
venge not thy deth." with thyse wordes he maad his
hors to renne vpon þe frenssh men so despytously that
whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd grete dom- 12
mage, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche
valyantly, sayeng : ¶ " O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I
shal lede awaye with me the kynge Charles with his
florished berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes." &
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in
suche wyse þat they dyd gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & þat lygnage, dyd
gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte
space by them were slain moo than a M paynyms.
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, ²attayned 28
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he
took hym, & layed hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon sauad hym,
notwythstondyng that many of theym were slain and
dede. Neuertheles the frensshe men surmounted the

¹ k j, back, col. 2.

² k ij.

paynyme, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dyscomfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth
 4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than fyfty
 other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays
more than 50
Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, & how thadmyral was taken & holden prysoner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynyme & frensshe men, alwaye perseuerynge in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende, eche one of other, For the multytude of the paynyme was so grete that they miȝt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan ¹the barons that were in the tour sawe the fayt, & that they that kepte the toure were goon to the socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French
knights, seeing
the battle, sally
out, and seizing
each a stray
horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond, & sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh them to the frensshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that the moost hardyest of the paynyme gaf them waye, &

charge the Sar-
acens, and force
their way through
them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn of flotypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

28 they were assembed wyth the other, wythoute letyng them to be knownen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde them soo shor that anone they slewen them in suche wyse þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

scattering them
like larks before
the hawk, (5550)

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þe sperhawke than the sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

13

¹ k ij, col. 2.

CHARL. ROM. III.

o

hys destractyon by the comyng¹ of the peres that were
in þ^e toure, & cryed² wyth an h[y]e voys: "mahon, my
god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and³ haue doon to

Balan invokes his
god Mahon (5569)

so moche honour, thou hast forgoten¹ me! Remembre 4
me now! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the
bothe flankes,² hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,
fals recreaunt god³ that thou art." he thus sayeng¹, he

He is unhorsed
and taken
prisoner, (5647)

was so pursywed² and smyton that he fyl doun vnder 8
his hors, and was taken, and not slain, at the request of
hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduyed³
to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &

and the battle
ends. (5681)

bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12
took an ende; and he that wold² not be conuerted³ was
incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme
were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men
wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys 16
barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial
his neuew rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,
& were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd ne
expressed the Loye that was emonge them; & the con- 20
solacyon & reioycyng¹ of kyng¹ charles was Inestymable.

There is great
rejoicing over the
safety of the
knights. (5670)

Thenne they recounted alle thynghes what were happend²
to them, & of theyr daungers and Leopardyes whiche
they had escaped³, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24
had endured², wherfore Charles and many other wept for
pyte. And thys endured² many dayes, there where as
the hurt men & seek were heeled³, & they that were
hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumph, and 28
Loye.

The army rests
some days to
recruit their
strength.

³¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-
cyon that was shewed¹ to hym, wold not
be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32
goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

¹ orig. forygoten. ² k ij, back. ³ k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she quene of that contreye :
capitulo

XV

4 **W**HAN charles had al appeased, he took ballant
the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to
hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures
resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer
loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche,
8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue
honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe,
& al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght
he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon
12 is compryse^d in hym which gyueth fayth and hope
in that whyche he hath made wylt hys hondes, & of
mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson
ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not
16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettis. Wher
fore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the
preseruyng^d of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou
take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons,
20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, ¹and^d holy
ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the
sone of god^d, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader
adam, descended in to thys world, and took humanyte
24 in the wombe of the blessed vrygyn marie, whyche was
al pure and wyt houte spotte. And byleue in the
artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comande
mentes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and
28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy
hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes
of helle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys
body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy
32 baptesme whyche he hath establisshed, wylt the other
sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shal
be saued, & thou shal neyther lose body ne goodes."

Charles sends for
Balan, (5719)and, declaring the
evil and folly of
idolatry,calls on him to
forsake it,and to believe in
God, (5724)and the articles of
the Christian
faith.He recounts
Christ's crucifix
ion, resurrection,
and ascension,and says that if
he will be con
verted, nothing
shall be taken
from him. (5722)

Balan swears he
will never forsake
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens
him with death.
(5756)

Fierabras inter-
cedes for his
father, who
agrees to be
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-
pared. (5789)

but Balan spits in
it, and nearly
kills the bishop,
(5809)

who is saved by
Ogier.

Fierabras again
intercedes for
Balan. (5813)

but Floripas urges
Charles to put
him to death at
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thynge do so, and
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue
Mahon. Themperour holdyng a naked swerd, sayd to
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seyng thys, kneled doun to
therthe, & prayed hys fader to do as the emperour had
sayd. Thadmyral fered the deth, & sayd that he was
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth ¹fayr water in
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.
& after, whan thadmyral was vncladde, the bysshop 12
demaunded hym, sayeng: "Syr ballant, forsake ye
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your
trespaces ² and byleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of
the vyrgyn marye ³" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshoop,
& wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had
plonged hym therin, ne had not Ogyer haue been, 20
whyche letted hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abasshed
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24
Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frende, Ye see that your
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oulfrage that
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel pacyence,
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the daughter of the Admyrall, seeyng 32
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore ²delaye ye so moche
to put thys deuyl to deth? I retche not though

¹ k iij, col. 2.

² k iij, back.

he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye
of bourgoyne to myn husband, whom I haue so moche
desyred." Fyerabrus answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a
good cristen man, & were baptysed and byleued in
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his
12 fader: "O moost dyer fader, I praye you to be better
aduysed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as
thumperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold &
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make
frendes."

20 Ballant answerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!
I shal neuer byleue in hym that dyed V. C. yere a-goon,
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is
24 arysen fro deth ¹to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,
that fool." whan fyerabrus had al vnderstonden hym,
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys
28 playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon
thumperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vn-
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys
32 heed, & Fyerabrus pardonne hym gladly. Thenne
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he shold
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of
bourgoyn. rolland answerd: "ye say trouth," and

Fyerabrus re-
proves her for her
unfilial conduct,
(5823)

and implores his
father to consent
to be a Christian.
(5823)

Balan calls him a
fool, and declares
he will never do
so. (5843)

Charles asks who
will kill the
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,
and smites off his
head. (5865)

¹ k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty,

and especially
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is
not changed.
Guy and Floripas
are married,

and crowned king
and queen of
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ "Syr, ye remembre wel what wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to hyr." Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4 themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was despoylek, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She beyng there al naked, shewek hyr beaute, whyche was 8 ryght whyte and wel forme, so playsaunt and amerouse for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man merueyld. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12 stondyng in ¹the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it had been a lytel shadewe to the colour of the vysage; hyr heyr shynynge as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16 accumyld that it henge bynethe hyr ²knees; hyr mouth was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel sytting, & ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20 lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and enflammed theyr entencyon wyth concupyscence, and specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24 auncyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptysed. And charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders, wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28 she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them, & after, themperour comanded to bryng forth the crowne of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32 And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf a partie to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all ³that

¹ k iiiij.

² orig. kuees.

³ k iiiij, col. 2.

¹euer guye shold haue, he shold holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the weddyng¹ and espousaylles
endured viij dayes. And charles abode there two
4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel
assured.

The wedding
festivities last
8 days. (5913)

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to
themperour, and how they were proued'
8 by myracle, & of the retournyng¹ of
Charles, and of the ende of thys book.
[capitulo xv]

12 **C**harles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in
the contreye adiacent, that he that wold not be
baptysed was put to deth, and so serched oueral.
And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and
sayd to hym: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue
16 crowned you and maad you quene of thys contree. I haue
accomplysshed your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,
your husband, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in
waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest
20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he
and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And
I shal leue with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the
ende that the paynyme be alwaye in drede; but ye
24 haue not yet shewed ²to me nothyng¹ of the holy
relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd: "Syr
emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and
thenne she brouȝt forth the chest in whyche they were
28 honestly.

Charles reminds
Floripa of all he
had done for her,
(5923)

and calls on her
to produce the
sacred reliques.
(5931)

¶ Themperour kneled doun on bothe hys knees, and
enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop
to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst
32 he shewed the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu
Cryst was crowned wyth, whyche was of prycyng

Floripa brings
him the coffer
contalning them,
(5936)

which Turpin
reverently opens.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5950)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5954)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshōp, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on h̄ye in the ayer, & wythdrew hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshōp certefyed to the ¹peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne every man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshōp took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes² & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode ³in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng: ¶ “O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin.” The bysshōp blesseyd alle the people there in makynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawen he took hede of hys gloue, &

¹ orig. peyle. ² orig. haudes. ³ k iiiij, back, col. 2.

retorneſt and ſaw hys gloue,—in whyche the ſaid ſmale
pyeſes of the ſayd relyques were,—abode hangyng in
thayer without ſusteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne

remains miracu-
lously ſuspended
in the air

4 ¹was this myracle ſeen euydently, and al thys was
ſhewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles
they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they ^{for an hour. (6002)} were al reconfermed to ſay that there was none abuſyon
8 in byleuyng & adouryng the ſayd relyques. And theſe
thynges tofore writon in this ſecond book ben vnder-
ſtonden in the beſt partye & ſygnyfycacion that I can
or wold ſay, And I haue not ſayd ony thyng but that
12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng. And as for the
book ensuyng, it ſhial make mencion of ſomme bataylles,
and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I
haue tofore ſpoken al alonge.

16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche con-
teyneth two partyes, by the chapytres
folowing declared'.

The contents of
the third book.

20 ¶ The fyrm partye of the thyrd book con-
teyneth xiiij chapytres, and ſpeketh of the
warres made in ſpayne, and' of two mer-
uaylloſe geauntes.

24 ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered' to Charles,
and how, by the moyen and' the conduyte
of the sterres, he went in to galyce, &
what cytees he subdued : ca. j

28 C Harles, the noble Emperor, after he had ſtaken
moche paine for to mayntene the name of god
for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to bryng al
the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he
had gotten many contrees, he purpoſed neuer more to

Charles wishes
after all his
labours to rest
from fighting.

and to devote
himself to
religion;

but in a vision he
sees a line of
stars,

pointing to
Galicia.

A man appears to
him,

who declares he
is St. James,
the Apostle of
Galicia,

and reproaches
him for not
recovering that
country from the
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng^t his maker of þ^e grace that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng^t hys enemyes. Neuertheles on a nyght it happed hym that he byhelde 4 the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng^t alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they began at the see of fryseland^t in passyng^t bytwene alemayn and ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and guyanne, 8 And passed ryght the sayd sterres by gascoyne, bascle, Nauarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd and maad^t crysten. And after, the ende of the sayd sterres thus 12 goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of the holy apostole was, he nat knowyng^t the propre place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the sayd sterres, and thought moche contynuelly what thys 16 myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In one nyght emonge the other that ¹charles thought on thys waye, a man appyered to hym in vysyon, whyche was so fayr, so playsaunte, and so shiynyng^t, that it was 20 meruaylle; whyche sayd to hym: "what doost thou, my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng^t al rauysshed, answerd^t: "who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd^t: "I am Iames, the apostole of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24 Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, & am he whom god chaas to preche the crysten fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and of galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyd^t put to deth by swerde; and my body abydeth emonge the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated^t it vylaynsly, & lyeth in a place whyche is not knownen. But I merueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and 28 consyderyd^t that thou hast conquerd so many regyones, townes, & cytees in the world^t. wherfore I do the to wete, that lyke as god hath chosen the, and made the

superyor in worldly puyssance aboue al other kynges
& worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that
lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of

as God wishes
him.

4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the
mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And
to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what ¹place
thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the
8 sterres by dyuyne magnyfycence. And for to obteyne
the more Ioye & gretter glorye in heuen, by haultayn
and grete puyssance, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-
myes, & in that same place thou sha[ll]t make and doo

He promises
him success,
and bids him raise
a church to his
name,

12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come
the cristen peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &
pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue
vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and
16 ordeyned cristen men for to kepe and conserue the
place, it shal be a memoire perpetuell." Thus in thy
maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperor
Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of

as a perpetual
memorial.

20 god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he
dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after
took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the
sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst

After this vision
had appeared
thrice,

24 in to spayne : and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym
was pampylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl
and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he
abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner
28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to
do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he
went, ²that in the vertu of hys name he myght take

Charles starts
with his army for
Galicia.

that cyte, and sayd in thys manere : " Fayr lord god,
32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contre
for to enhaunce the cristen fayth, for to establissh
and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy
saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

He besieges Pam-
peluna in vain for
three months,

and then invokes
in prayer the help
of St. James.

¹ k v, back, col. 2.

² k vj.

Journeye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbylcyng¹ peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnyng may the better determyne the ende of myn enteneyon." 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had fynysshid² his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeess; and after, charles and his hoost entred³ in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold⁴ be baptysed⁵ & byleue in god⁶ wythoute fyctyon, was sauad⁷ and put a-parte, and who sayd⁸ the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydylges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned⁹ in to Ruyne at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradixyon came and yeldeid¹⁰ them to the mercy of kyng¹¹ charles. And thus many were baptysed¹², and chyrches 16 were ordeyned¹³, and al the contreye reducled to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelyte of the emperor charles, and brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute ony other gaynsayeng in sygne of seygnourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, & how somme were by hym destroyed'. [capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

at a place called Petronium.

A fter that charles had the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd¹⁴ hys deuocyon, and¹⁵ made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in þe lond whynch was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and¹⁶ there fyxed¹⁷ 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called¹⁸ petronium; & thanked¹⁹ god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute ony contradixyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no ferther. And in that londe who that wold²⁰ byleue

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who that wold not, he was slain, or put in pryson. And after Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he
 4 gate in galyce xijij cytees, emonge whome compostelle was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvij grete townes & stronge, emonge whome ¹was onsea, in which were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua, where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was dysciple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllyng.

He captures 13 cities in Galicia, and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns, the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not wynne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he layed syege tofore it by the space of foure moniethes.
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not wynne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that ²the walles fyloun to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therin after, and after it
 32 sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water, In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke. Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

the whole of which was subject to him.

He besieges Lucerne for 4 months,

but in vain,

and then prays to St. James,

when the walls fall down, and the city is taken,

and turned into a lake containing black fishes.

¹ k vj, back.

² k vj, back, col. 2.

therfore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursed, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte,
whyche coude not be smyton doun, and
of the condycyons and' sygnes therof:
ca. iij 8

WHAN Charles had doon in spayne & other places,
wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle
thydolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd
do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12
Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was¹
the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That
ydolle was made of the honde of Machommete in the
tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahommet ²in 16
thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke
he closed therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and
make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was

Charles destroys
all the idols;

kept so by devils
that none could
destroy it,

and which no
Christian dare
approach.

It stood on a
large stone,
richly carved,

kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuyng coude by 20
strengthe destroye it, ne put it doun. In suche wyse
that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to
coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure
and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24
the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make
sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout
peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came &
rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28
vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously
made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns,
and grauen subtylly of grete and ryche facyon, the
whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete 32
crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

¹ orig. and was.

² k vii.

grete, & alway vpward it was lasse ; and that stone was
so hye as a crowe myght flee : vpon whyche stone was
thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorye, after that
4 semblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, &
had hys face torned to the south, & helde in his ryght
honde a grete keye, & the sarasynis were certefyed ¹ for
trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne,
8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and
brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle
the keye, whych shold be a sygne þat the kyng of
fraunce shold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme
12 that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to
brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye
falle doun to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns
sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,
16 and precyous stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten
men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in
to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of
the kyng.

and was of fine
ivory,

and held in his
hand a key,

which was to fall
when a king
should come to
subdue the
country.

On the approach
of Charles the
key falls.

24 **C**harles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte
of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many
kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of
cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Charles, having
an immense
quantity of gold
and silver,

¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerid
28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne ²aforesayd.
Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd
do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the
place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and
32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,
and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

¹ k vij, col. 2.

² k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church he builds at Acon to Our Lady,

and four to St. James,

besides abbeys and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes reguler, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordyned for them rentes & trybutes suffycyent, and gaf to them synguler seygnourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of precyous clothes, & al thynge necessarye & apperteynyng¹ in a chyrche pontyfical also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyces, & other holy escryptures. And of 8 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng.

¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounte of martres. & aboue the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo

v

After Charles's return to France,

Aygolant, an African giant, reconquers Spain,

and puts the Christians to death.

A fter that charles was retorne^d in to Fraunce, a kyng¹ sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puysaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subiectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth; and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tdynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.

wherfore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour 4 of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland. & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thysfeat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, ¹ and 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys 12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng thentencyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not 16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by 20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoutre grete resystance put to deth and slain. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two 24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þe sarasyns were slain, and the other put to fyght for to sauе them self. The thyrd day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences, 28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles ² was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and 32 specyally charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

¹ k viij.

² k viij, col. 2.

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of saynt faconde and saynt prematyf rested, where after was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a 4 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8 speres on þe morn were founden al grene, floresshed and leued, whyche was a preccedent sygne that they whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.

By a miracle it is shown which of the French soldiers should be killed in the battle.

¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12 leues, wthy whyche the leues were planted and vnder-

From their spears springs up a great wood.

roded, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode, whyche stondeth there yet. It was grete meruayle of the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16 deuoys as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt ¹crysten men were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne duc Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a fote he maad grete murdre wthy hys swerde Ioyouse, and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the

Milo and 50 knights are slain,

euenyng, fledde & wythdrewen them in to place of 24 surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next

Reinforcements come to Charles,

day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiiij marquise of ytalye, accompanied wthy iiiij M stronge fyghtyng men & chosen. wherfore Aigolant, assone as he knewe 28

whereupon Aigolant flies to Africa.

of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewen hym ouer the see toward hys contree. but they myȝt not for hast bere with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was enryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

Charles returns to France,

¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng he came wthy al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and thenne, duryng seuen yere, he dyd do ordleyne the seruyce and offyce of

the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere ; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was compryse^d in thys man. For whan it was
 4 not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd ¹reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy
 8 marters in establisshyn^g theyr feestes, to thende that we shold^d ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng^t was wel preued^d by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone
 12 derked^d thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and compagnyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupies himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aigolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and' how Charles in habyte dys- symyled' spake to hym, and' of other
 20 maters : capitulo vj

AS I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aigolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his
 24 purpoos, but maa^d grete dylgence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens ; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of
 28 arabye, the kyng^t of barbarye, the kyng^t of malroste, the kyng of ²maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng^t of cybille, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with
 32 peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a
 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold^d come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascoyne, and captures the city of Agenne.

¹ k viij, back, col. 2.

² 1 j.

Aigolant invites
Charles to visit
him unattended.

Charles sets out
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,
except 40,
near the city.

He himself, in
disguise and with
only one attend-
ant, enters the
city,

and presents him-
self as a messenger
from Charles,

to say he had
come with only
40 attendants.

Aigolant replies
that he will go
and meet the
French king.

trustly, with a fewe peple, promysyng^t to hym for to gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and precyous stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4 his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he wel by exeryence, and also to thende whan he knewe hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8 peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a 12 mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl knyghtes only. And fro thys place they saw the cyte, by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were departed, soo that he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16 vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a messenger, and ¹took one knyght onely with hym, whyche bare his spere & swerde and bocler vnder hys 20 mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24 he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes, withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysshe and holde 28 that thou hast promysed." Aigolant sayd to hem that they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32 had knownen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne, for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer it whan he shold come ageyn, & sawe al the kynges.

¹ 1 j, col. 2.

forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorne^d to his Charles, having
peple whiche he had^d left vpon the montayne, & after spied out all the
came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant, city, departs.
4 accompanied^d wyth vij M kny^ȝtes, came after them Algolant, with
withoute taryeng[!]. But charles took hede whan he cam 7000 men, follows
that there were many moo paynyme than crysten men, him,
and ¹wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de- but Charles
8 parted^d, and retourned^d in to fraunce wythout hauyng escapes.
other delyberacyon.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche
12 peple, retorne^d in to the place aforesayd &
toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :
[capitulo] vij

After that charles was retorne^d in to fraunce he Charles assembles
16 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte a large army,
of agenne, & assyeged^d it there by grete facyon, and lays siege to
the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin & Agenne, which he
many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortessis- surrounds.
& castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan
20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his compayne sawe *þat* Aigolant and his
they myght not endure, they maad^d hooles & caues vnder lords escape by
therth for tescape oute secretly : in that maner they came mines.
out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by
24 the cyte, named gorouna, and so they sauued them self. Charles enters the
The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst- city,
ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete
tryumph^e & puyssaunce entred^d in to the cyte, & put to
28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other, and after besieges
seyng[!] that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant the city to which
2 was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it Aigolant had fled.
he came thyder & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer
32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd^d that he wold^d not so
doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold^d make a

¹ 1 j, back.² 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes a general battle.

Those of the Christians who were destined to die are again pointed out by a miracle.

The Saracens are utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wynne the bataylle shold be lord[¶] of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel thalabourt & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4 crysten men planted[¶] theyr speres in the grounde, especially they that on the morn shold[¶] deye, & obteyne the crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morne they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8 & ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche Ioyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for þe cristen fayth in mayntenynge the name of god. After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12 bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in thende were slain and martred, of cristen men moo than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; & that tyme the hors that Charles rode on was slain vnder hym, 16 and at that bataylle were slain by the sayd Charles the kynge of Agabye [&] the kyng[¶] of bugye, merueyllous myghty sarasyns.

^{1¶} Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20 made whan he was retorne^d in to fraunce, & what barons he had^d in hys compayne, & of theyr puyssance: ca. viij

After his defeat
Aigolant flies to
Pampeluna.

Charles returns
to France for
reinforcements.

THe bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24 came in to panpylene, and sent to kyng[¶] charles that he shold[¶] abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre he retourned[¶] in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28 peple, and made an open maundement thorugh[¶] out al Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr successors, shold[¶] be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32 be delyuerd accordyng[¶] to the lawe, that wold goo with

hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysnners
 that were in fraunce, he delyuerd⁴ them al out of
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonne
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good
 largely, & them that were euyll clad⁸, he clothed them
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he
 pleased them & accorded¹²; Alle them þat were dys-
 heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al
 to them; Alle þe peple¹ that myght bere armes he
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-
 nacyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed¹⁶ for the
 loue of god¹⁶, he was constrainede to pardonne them, &
 16 made pees with euery man. and thenne he was four-
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand²⁰ men wel fyghtyng,
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innumer-
 able. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,
 20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: “I, Turpyn, archebysshop
 of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good²⁴ courage
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydelis, sarasyns,
 with myn owne handes.” ¶ Wyth Charles was
 24 Roulland²⁸ of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure
 thousand³² fyglityng¹ men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of
 duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng¹ men: Aristagius,
 28 kyng¹ of brytayne, wyth viij thousand fyghtyng¹ men;
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng¹,
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-
 gustus Cezar had ordeyned², wyth the byturciens, the
 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauconens, and Elogysmes,
 cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam
 with iij M horsmen² good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng¹
 of bordeloyis, with iiiij M men; Salomon, felow of estok;

He frees all
prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the
disinherited,

and raises the
esquires to
knighthood,
on condition of
joining his army.

Turpin assures
him of success.

With Charles are
Roland, Oliver,
and Aristagius
with 14,000 men.

Besides were men
from Guienne,

Burgundy,

Lorraine, and
other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bauyere, wyth x M fyghtyng men; Hoel of Nauntes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4 lorayne, & many other; and Charles had of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excercyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyng of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the freusshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more.

12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant,
and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore
aygolant was not baptysed: capitulo ix

Aigolant, frighth-
ened at the num-
bers of the French,proposes a con-
ference.

THe whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16 lerned at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold. Aygolant, thys geaunt and grete Lord, coude not absteyne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was ¹maad bytwene them. For Aygolant consyderyd the multytude of hys people and the puyssaunces of their personnes. For by cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the 24 crysten peple, but he thought that the god of crysten people was more certayn and trewe than the god of the paynynms; but er he wold declyne fro the worshyppynge of hys goddes, he had desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynynms ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold obteyne the vyctorye vpon others peple, that his god were holden and worshypped, 32 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle

It is agreed to
leave the question
of religion to a
trial of arms
between equal
numbers.¹ 1 ij, back, col. 2.

shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.

And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynyns. And anone 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty sarasyns were slain. And after were sente fourty ayenst fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slain and vayn-quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but

8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thouȝt he wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slain. [¶] Thys geaunt was euyl contente of the destractyon of hys 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wythoute makyngh grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone slain and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by

16 expyrience for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn than the lawe of the paynyns and sarasyns, and thus he was enclyned to the crysten fayth, & dysposed hym to 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo & come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was

24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were vayllerous and soo grete as it was in armes and in bataylles. And also he came pryncipally for to be 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete magnyfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;

32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and the cause of theyr estate, and after ²that he sawe in a parte of y^e halle sytting on the grounde, xijij poure persones, which dyned & ete as other dyd. for

20 Christians engage as many Saracens, and slay them;

and after 40 overcome 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000 Christians slay 1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is convinced, and agrees to receive baptism.

He asks to see Charles at meat with his lords.

He sees 13 poor men, sitting on the ground at dinner,

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiij poure men in the worshypp of our lord and of his xij apostles, & he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4

and asks who and what they are.

Charles tells him they are maintained in memory of our Lord and His Apostles.

habyte, & dyned al soroufully, & he demaunded what people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij apostles 8 that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aygolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl hys lord y^t receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the seruauntes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed ayenst y^e colde, & ben withdrawn ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his mes- 16 sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good & holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe." & herof aygolant was all moeued & troubled 20 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro hys purpose, toke leue of the ¹kyng & retourned to hys peple, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y^e morne more 24 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

and refuses to be baptised.

Charles is enraged,

¶ Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slain by concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28 founden dede by myracle : [ca.] x

WHAN charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptys hym he was moche Ioyous, but whan he retorne^d & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

¹ 1 iij, back.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour re-
 4 membred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thexercytle he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them 8 mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylle^d not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to 12 fygght ¹ayenst the cristen men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destractyon that day of the sarasyns, that the cristen men were empesshed^d and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned^d many 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore² Aigolant, seyng the destractyon of his people as he that doubted^d nothyng to deye, aduaunced³ so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred^d in to the 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therin.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng^d of cordube sauued them self with somme of their subgettes. After 24 thys the cristen men ful of couetyse for to haue gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed^d retorne^d, And whan they were wel charged^d & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng^d of Cybylle and the kyng^d 28 of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couerly vpon the cristen men, and put to deth moo than a thousand^d.

¶ Thus may be knownen that the ardeur of concupyscence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoutte vyctorye, and to god^d dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

and has all these
poor men clothed
and honourably
treated.

A great battle
takes place,

In which the
Saracens are
defeated,

and Aigolant
himself slain.

The kings of
Seville and of
Cordova fall on
the Christians
laden with booty,
and kill more
than 1000,

from which we
may see the
danger of covet-
ousness.

¹ iij, back, col. 2.

² orig. wherfor.

³ orig. and aduaunced.

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and
prays to God to
point out which
of the Christians
are destined to
die.

This being shoun
to him,

he locks them up
in his chapel,

and goes to battle
without them.

On his return he
finds them all
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce ¹of Nauarre named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt, & so trustyngⁱ in god, whan he faught for the crysten ⁴fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that it plesed^d hym, to shew what crysten men shold^d deye in ⁸that bataylle. and on the day folowyngh whan euery man was armed^d for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. ¹² whan charles sawe it he thanked^d our lord & had^d compassyon of theyr dethⁱ, by cause of the valyaunce of theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and ¹⁶ after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold not take deth that day ; and thenne wyth al his other hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed ²⁰ and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperor came in to hys oratorye vctoryous vpon hys enemies, and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede & expyredⁱ, & thenne knewe² he wel that alle they that ²⁴ were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to be receyued in to heuen with gloriye & crowne of marterdom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put ²⁸ hym in Payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce ³²
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught
wyth hym : capitulo

¹ 1 iiiij.

² 1 iiiij, col. 2.

A fter that aygolant was slain, & Furre, & many kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynge cam to the admiral of babyloune, the which had a 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of golias, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst charles themerour. For hys puyssance was redoubted 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,

12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl ¹myghty men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynge of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his

16 watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knownen this geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn- guler persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogyer the

20 danoys. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the felde, without makynge of ony semblaunte of warre, he came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande & put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doyng to hym ony

24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyde do put hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym, than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face

28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes & thydes four cubytes longe. The backe of his hand was thre palmes longe. After that Ogyer was borne thus awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus

32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other. Charles was abasshed and sent tweyne other, that is to wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt took that one wyth² the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of Babylon sends Ferragus, a mar-vellous giant,

to fight against Charles.

He challenges any French knight.

Charles sends Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus takes him under his arm and

carries him off, as a wolf wold a lamb.

Charles then sends Raynold, and he also is carried off.

Then Constanyn and Hoel are sent,

¹ 1 iiii, back.

² orig. wyght.

but Ferragus
carries them off,
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave
to fight the giant.

Charles reluctantly gives his
consent.

Ferragus lifts
Roland up with
one hand, and
lays him on his
horse before him.

Roland, by an
effort, overthrows
the giant.

Roland kills the
Saracen's horse,

and wounds
Ferragus in the
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them ¹bothe tweyne in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see. yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or ⁴ contradycyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende ony persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was prynce of al thexersyte of Charles, was euyl contente of thys that the geaunt was vycitoryous, & came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrainyd to gyue to hym lycence, ¹² & Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was ¹⁶ taken & borne awaye soo vylaynsly he took a grete² courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to ²⁰ ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe ³hys swerde durandal ²⁴ and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynyme hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took ²⁸ hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland, Roulland auaanced hym self and smote the geant vpon ³² the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

¹ 1 iiiij, back, col. 2.

² orig. gtete.

³ 1 v.

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in
suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe
two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght
4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the
houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wary, and
took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,
and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute
8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys
lodgys.

Roland's horse is killed.

Being both weary,
they leave off
fighting for the
day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus
foughten & dysputededen the fayth, and by
12 what ¹moyen Feragus was slayn by Roul-
land': capitulo xij

The next day folowynge erly, Rolland and Feragus
came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt
16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothynge
worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or
clubbe, ryȝt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;
but he myght nowher hurte hym. & also he smote
20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo
wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this
maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-
day. The geaunt was wary, and demaunded tryews of
24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland
was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that
whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete
stone and layed it vnder hys heed, to the ende that he
28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And
after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,
he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by
hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy
32 feaſt, How thou art so ſtronge and ſo terryble that thou
mayſt not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by ſword,

Next morning the
duel is renewed.

Roland takes with
him only a great
staff.

At noon Ferragus
is tired, and
wishes to sleep a
while.

Roland makes
him comfortable.

He asks him how
it is he cannot
by any means
wound him.

Ferragus tells him
that he is vulner-
able only in the
navel.

The Saracen
inquires about
the doctrines of
Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all
that are baptised
shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes
to settle the ques-
tion of religion by
arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in¹ ²noo wyse." The
geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : "I may
not be slayn, but by the nauell." whan Rolland^d herde
that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4
After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,
and of what lygnage he was. Rolland^d sayd to hym :
"I am named^d Rolland^d, and am neuew of charles, the
ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked^d of hym 8
what lawe he helde. Rolland^d ansuered : "I holde the
cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :
"what fayth is that, and^d who hath gyuen it?" to
whyche Roulland^d ansuered : "It is trouthe y^t after god 12
almy³ty had^d made heuen and^d erthe, and^d our fyrst fader
adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaundem-
ents; the world was Juged here in erthe wythoute
hauyng^d of beatytude, ne of felycye: and long tyme 16
after the sone of god, the second^d persone of the Trynyte,
remembred^d hym of the value of the soule, the whiche
is gyuen to euery persone, and^d descended^d fro heuen and^d
took our humanyte and^d suffred^d greuous passyon of 20
paynes. And^d he beyng^d in thyw^d world^d hath gyuen en-
seygnements and^d stablyssed^d constytucyons for to sau-
vs, & pryncipally who byleueth in hym & in hys
werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed^d, After thyw^d 24
³mortel lyf he shal be saued^d in heuen: and, loo! thyw^d
is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."
And^d after that Feragus had^d made to hym many ques-
tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland^d had^d ansuered^d to 28
hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this
manere : "thou art crysten, and^d wylt mayntene the
fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and^d I am a paynym,
& holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that 32
shal be vanquysshed^d & ouercome, late hys lawe be
holde for nought and^d of noo valewe, and the fayth of
hym that is vycutoryous late it be holden for good &

¹ orig. im.

² 1 v, back.

³ 1 v, back, col. 2.

trewe, and that it be entyerly kepte and obserued."

The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, & accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to

4 fyght. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Feragus lyft Roland agrees.
vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malycously, The fight is
and Roulland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and renewed.
for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde,
8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and Roland's staff is
there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym cut in two,
doun vnder hym. Rolland, consyderyng that he myght
not flee ne escape, he called in hys hert deuoutely the
12 name of Ihesus, and yelded hym to god & ¹to the
vyrgyn marye: & he anon repreysed suche strengthe & but by a great
myȝt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtly repugned the effort he gets the
geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte giant under him
16 vnder hym, and thenne moche quycly and subtylly he and stabs him in
sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the the navel.
nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that
he myȝt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte
20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye & lowde,
that alle they that were in that place were aferd &
abasshed of hys crye, & he sayd: "O Mahommet, my
god, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour
24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger."
with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and The Saracens bear
bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they Ferragus away.
coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland was
28 comen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth Charles assaults
the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns the town,
that bare Feragus, and entred in to the cyte, and so takes it and
moche dyd that the geaunt was dede, and after came
32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and took out Ogyer, releases his
Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonniers. knights.

¹ 1 vi.

¶ How Charles went to Cor¹dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng² of Cybylle abode, for their destractyon : ca. xijij 4

The kings of
Cordova and
Seville defy
Charles,

who marches
against them.

The Saracens, by
a stratagem,

frighten the
horses of the
Frenchmen,
and put them to
flight.

Charles devises a
remedy,

and the battle is
renewed next
day.

Of the standard
of the Saracens.

A fter thys aforesayd, the kyng¹ Corbude and the kyng² of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssance. And 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad³ a moche subtyl and wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had³ ordeyned men on fote, whyche had³ vysieres counter- 12 feyted³ all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylls, for to deceyue the crysten men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuosity they began to flee, disrenge & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and wythdrawe them. Charles deuyse³ a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couerd³ theyr eyen wyth clothes, And³ stopped³ theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold³ not see ne ²here the sarasyns dysguysed³ & countrefayted³. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared³ not, but slewe doun ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed, For they had³ a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and³ make grete empesshement to theyr enemyes. And³ this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon³ stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on Payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

¹ 1 vj, col. 2.

² 1 vi, back.

³ orig. thre-vpon.

aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to 4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y^e paynynms were slain and dede. & on the morne after the towne was delyuered vnto 8 Charles by the lord of the toun,¹ whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun fo- to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne 12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was ²alwaye vyctoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also 16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncipally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettess.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was 20 halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettess therto, and' of other pryncipal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

CHarles the noble emperour, after that he had 24 put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good, 28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dysobeysante to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and 32 bannysshed them. And thenne thorugh al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

¹ orig. tonn.

² 1 vj, back, col. 2.

and ordains that
all the bishops of
Spain shall be
subject to the
bishop of St.
James.

Turpin consec-
rates the Church
of St. James.

Charles appoints
the payment of
tithes to the
church,

and orders that
all consecrations
and coronations
shall take place
there.

The body of St.
John is deposited
on the right side,
and that of St.
James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytucyons,¹ synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt ²Iames he made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, ⁴ prynces, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fydelyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyce. And accordyng to the same the archebisshop Turpyn wryteth in thys manere : “ And I, Turpyn, archebisshop of Raynes, was in the same place, where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I, accompanied wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good ¹² lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed, dedycated, blesseyd, and consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the auter of the same. And after thenne the kyng Charles gaf al ¹⁶ the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And after ordeyned y^t euery hous of spayn and galyce shold gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiiij pens of the money corraunt for annuel³ trybute. And by the ²⁰ moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruytude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he establisshed that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be sayd apostolyque for thexaltacion of the place. And ²⁴ more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dygnyte of alle spayne & of galyce, ⁴ and semblably the coronacions of kynges of al the contre, shold be crowned & sacred by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse ²⁸ as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuan-gelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. & thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And ³² Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne was accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

¹ orig. constytucyous. ² 1 viij. ³ orig. amuel.
⁴ 1 viij, col. 2.

hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu
 Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte,
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,
 4 whyche was thenne accomplaysshed and termyned. &
 therfore in the world ben thre syges and chyrches
 pryncipal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Eph-
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of
 Saynt Iames in galycy. And yf ony demaunded the
 cause of these thre places and syges pryncipal of cris-
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apparette. These thre
 places ben honourely pryncypally by cause the synners
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr
 lyues, and put ¹awaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardon
 16 and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij apostles, that is to say,
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Johan, & saynt James, haue pre-
 cedē all the other in the compayne of Jhesu Cryst
 whan he was in thys world, & haue ben called to hys
 20 secrete, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue
 conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honourely and to be
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preached at Rome, and there
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome
 is enhaunced & exaltek aboue al other chyrches. &
 28 after saynt Johan, whyche sawe the secrete of god in
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel 'In
 principio erat verbum & cetera,' And by his holy
 prechynge hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had
 grete Payne in spayne and in galycy, for the honour of
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal world."

Thus the three chief churches in the world are those of Rome, Ephesus, and St. James,

because St. Peter, St. John, and St. James were the chief of the Apostles.

The church of Rome is the head, because there St. Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next, because there St. John wrote his Gospel,

and the church of St. James is third.

¹ I vij, back.

T The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

T How the treason was comprySED' by Ganel-
lon, and of the deth of crysten men, &
how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour:
capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and
Bellegandus,
kings of Sar-
gossa, pretend to
be ready to sub-
mit to Charles.

Charles sends
Ganelon,
requiring them to
be baptized and
pay tribute.

The Saracens send
presents to
Charles, and in-
duce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise
to betray the
French army.

N this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the 12 whyche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synges of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaundement holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepeyon. Thumperour, seyng that they were not crysten, and for 16 to gete seygnourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptysye them, or ellis that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelyte of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20 went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuale wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold & syluer, wthy clothes of sylke, ² and other 24 rychesse, & iij hondred hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28 in sygne of loue and of obeyssance. and after they gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wthy gold and syluer, sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the compayne of 32 charles yf he myght doo it.

¹ 1 vij, back, col. 2.

² 1 vij.

Thenne ganellon was surpryzed wyth thys fals auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte that is in personnes, for to haue gold[¶] or syluer & other 4 rychesesses, & made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the sarasyns for to betraye hys lord[¶], hys neyghbours, & crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them of thenterprise; but I merueylle moche of ganellon, 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue¹ cause coloured[¶] ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains to betray Charles and his fellow-countrymen.

The author's re-proach to Ganelon for his treachery.

¶ O wycked[¶] Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse, & thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche 12 & a grete lord[¶], and for money thou hast betrayed[¶] thy mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to goo to y^e sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other, and for the fydelyte that was thought in ²the, thou 16 hast consented[¶] to trayson, and[¶] allone hast commysed[¶] Infydelyte. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of a fals wylle plunged[¶] in thabysme of auaryce? Thy naturel souerayn lord[¶], Roulland[¶], Olyuer, & the other, 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre? 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capytayn ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende sheweth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god[¶] dysobeysaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put to vtre ruyne and destrucyon. Thus in thys manere 32 ganellon brought gold[¶] and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and other rychesesses, as tofore he had enterprysed[¶]. Whan charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in good[¶] entent and equyte and wythout barat. The grete

for which he had no reason but avarice,

which had ruined so many.

Ganelon presents the presents to Charles,

who falls into the trap.

¹ orig. hane.

² 1 viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold and silver himself, and gives the wine to his knights.

Charles, persuaded by Ganellon, sends his homewards.

Marsurius and Bellegandus lay an ambush in Roncesvalles,

which falls on the French.

The fight lasts all day.

At night the French soldiers get drunk on the wine.

Then 30,000 Saracens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people took the hethen wymmen. Themperour ¹gaf consente to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, ⁴ and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelyte to ⁸ the emperor; And anone sent his peple tofore, and he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland & Olyuer & the moost specyal of hys subgettes wyth a thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounceuale. ¹² Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after the coundeyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & ¹⁶ deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were ²⁰ assaylyed wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre in suche wyse that they were constrainyd to withdrawe them; For fro the mornyng vnto the houre of tyerce they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore ²⁴ the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to reste theym. Neuertheles, they ²dronken wel of the good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And after many of them that were dronke went & laye by ²⁸ the wymmen sarasynoys, & also wyth other that they had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their martyrdome & passyon myght be the cause of theyr ³² saucyon & purgyng of their synne. For anone after the thyrti thousand sarasyns cam that were in the second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

¹ 1 viij, back.

² 1 viij, back, col. 2.

that they were al dede and slain, Except Roulland, bauldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slain and dede with speres: somme slain, somme rosted, and other 4 quartred, and submysed to many tormentes. And whan thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles, and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche 8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to deth. ¶ Of the languysshe that was comynge to Charles, he wiste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how 12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slain : capitulo : ij

¶ **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery, 16 retorneſt he recounted in hys waye a sarasyn moche fyers & blacke as boylleſt pytche, and anone he took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a 20 tree straytely, wythoute doyng to hym ony more harme, and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynynms. Wherfore 24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred crysten men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo. And whan they were come to hym he retorneſt to the 28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye, - yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus, & yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn 32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for to sauе his lyf; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures
a Saracen,
whom he ties to
a tree,

and afterwards
compels to point
out to him Mar-
surius.

The Saracen
points out Mar-
surius,

whom Roland
kills.

The Saracens fly
before him.

All the French
are killed, except
three.

Bellegandus and
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynyme, and shewed to Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poyn^t Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng⁴ ¹verly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus, as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8 durandal vpon the hede that he clefte hym & hys hors in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde & that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns were soo troubled and abasshed of the myght and puy- 12 saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, & thenne abode the kyng Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke. Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16 the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in thys recountrre were dolorously slain & put to deth, Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20 slain kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with stoones, and hurte wyth darpes and other shotte mor- 24 tally. And not withstondyng these greuous hurte & woundes, yet, maugre al the sarasyns, he sprange out of the bataylle, and sauad hym self the best wyse he myght. ²Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28 that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people, retorne^d in to another contreye³, wyth hys peple moche hastely. And themperour Charles had thenne passed the montayne of Roncyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32 these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

¹ m j, col. 2.

² m j, back.

³ orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely,
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde
4 durandal : capitulo ij

Rolland the valyaunt, and champyon of the cristen fayth, was moche sorouful of the cristen men, by cause they had noo socours ; he was moche wery, 8 gretely abasshed, & moche affeblede in hys persone, for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete Payne to gete 12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel memoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye, 16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron-
cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat down¹ on the grunde he behelde his swerde, the best that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to 20 say as gyueng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr & rychely made : the handle was of fyn beryle, shynynge meruallously ; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so 24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe & sawe it shyne moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd 28 in thys maner pytously : ¶ "O swerd of valure, the fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne neuer fonde I the but good : thou art long by mesure ; Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou 32 barest with the the name of the blesseyd Ihesus, sauour of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power of god. who may comprehend thy valure ? Alas !

Roland, although
greatly exhausted
by loss of blood,

struggles nearly
to Saragossa,

where he lies
down.

He looks with
grief on Durandal,

and weeping,
bids it farewell.

¹ m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments
over his sword
Durandal.

Determined that
no Saracen shall
ever have it,

tries to break it
on a rock,

but Durandal
cleaves the rock
without harm to
itself.

Roland blows his
ivory horn so hard
that it breaks,

and the veins of
his neck burst.

Charles hears the
horn and recog-
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue good
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,
good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by 4
the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slain by
the; the name of god is exalte^d by the; by the is
made the path of ¹sauement. O, how many tymes
haue I by the auenged thyniurye made to god! O, 8
how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort and my Joye, whych never hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12
of noo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye
for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte ynough, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded² in hym self to breke it, 16
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng³ ony thynge the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and 20
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it
muche strongly, to the ende that yf there were ony
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore
they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred⁴ hys
sowle. Thenne, seyng⁵ that none came, he sowned it
ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, 28
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the ³synewes
of his body stratchededen. And that noys or voys by the
grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blowen it, an^d
wold haue retorne^d ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

¹ m ij.

² orig. concluded.

³ m ij, col. 2.

whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourned hym, in
sayeng¹ that Rolland² had blowen his horne for somme
wylde beest that he chaced³ for his playsyr; For ofte
4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and
that he shold⁴ not doubt of nothyng. ¶ And thus he
dyd⁵ the kynge to vnderstonde that he byleued⁶ hym,
and⁷ made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-
8 land, leyng in thys sorowe, he peased⁸ hys woundes also
wel as he myght, and⁹ stratched¹⁰ hymself on the grasse
to the fresshenes for to forgete hys thurst, whyche was
ouer grete.

but Ganelon per-
suades him that
Roland is hunt-
ing.

Roland stretches
himself on the
grass.

12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, Baldwin comes to
whyche was moche heuy and¹¹ sorouful for hys brother
Roulland¹², whyche was in that necessytye. And¹³ anone
Roulland¹⁴ sayd¹⁵ to hym, "my frende and¹⁶ my brother,
16 I haue so grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue
not drynke to aswage my thurst.

Baldwin comes to
him.

¶ Baulduyn had¹⁷ grete Payne in goyng here and¹⁸ there,
and¹⁹ coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &
20 sayde he coude fynde none; and²⁰ in grete anguysshe he
lepte²¹ on Roullandes hors, and²² rode for to fetche charles,
For he knewe wel that rolland²³ was nyghe hys deth.
Anone after came to hym Thyerry, duc of Ardayne,
24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland²⁴ so contynuelly that he my²⁵nt
not speke. but with grete Payne Rolland confessyd hym
and²⁶ dysposed²⁷ hym of hys consyence. neuertheles, that
same day Rolland²⁸ had²⁹ receyued³⁰ the body of our lord³¹,

Roland asks for
water, but Bald-
win can find none,

and rides off to
fetch Charles.

Roland confesses
himself,

28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that
day whyche they shold³² fyght were confessyd & comuned
wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway
were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by
32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &
hys hondes loyner³³, al stratched³⁴ in the medowe, began
to say thus: " Fayre lord³⁵ god, my maker, my redemour,
sone of the gloryous moder of conforte, thou knowest
and knowing his
end is near,

commends him-
self to God,

¹ m ij, back.

² orig. lefte

myn entency[on], thou knowest what I haue doon for
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of
 whyche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in
 the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4
 and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the
 y^t tofore the thys day my faul⁻¹tes, synnes, and ygnor-
 aunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde
 to the trespasses that I haue doon to the ; but beholde 8
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed
 me, I beseche the that I be not loste. Alas ! my maker 12
 god omnypotent, wyth good wylle I departed oute of
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred
 many anguysshess of hungre, of thurst, of hete, of colde, 16
 & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,
 my god, I yelde me culpable ; I mystrust not thy mercy.
 thou art pyetous ; thou art comen for the synnars ; thou
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good theef on the 20
 crosse, by cause they retorne vnto the ; they were
 synnars as I am ; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24
 he ferde moche the better ; byholde me how I am obe-
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrche : I byleue
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.
 ¶ O good lord, I beseche the to pardoune & forgyue 28
 alle theym that thys day ben deed in ²my companye,
 & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thurst, and 32
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I
 suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

He prays for the
souls of his com-
rades.

through the
merits of Christ,

and for the dan-
gers and troubles
he has gone
through for the
Christian religion.

as al thyis is trewe, pardone me, conforte my spyryte,
receyue my soule, and bryngē me to reste perdurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes
4 on hys body, holdyng hys fleshe, and after sayd thre
tymes, ¶ “**Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem**
meum,” and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and
sayd, “**Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,** In thy
8 fleshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these
eyen shal beholde hym ;” and after he sayd that he
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,
12 the glorye whyche god hath maađ redy to them that
loue hym ; and in sayeng, “**In manus tuas, domine,**
commendo spiritum meum,” he layed hys armes vpon
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys
16 soule to god the xvij kalendes of Juyl.

¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland,
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other
maters: capitulo iiiij

“**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounchyale, tofore 24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and herde the aungellys of heuen syng and make grete 28 melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wherfore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte in to heuen on lyte, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a 32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye. when they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them “**T**he day that Roland died, I, Turpin, was celebrating mass before Charles, and in the ‘secret’ I saw a vision of black spirits passing with great noise,

and I asked them
who they were,

and they told me
of the deaths of
Marsurius and
Roland.

And I told the
vision to Charles,

and, while I was
speaking, came
Baldwin, and told
us of the slaughter
of our men.

And Charles
ordered the army
to return,

and he himself in
front found
Roland dead,

and he wept and
lamented over
him bitterly.

and demaunded who they¹ were, & what they bare. One of the deuylles ansuered & sayd, ‘we bere the kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-goon he hath wel deserued it. And Roulland, your trompette, wyth 4 Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is brouȝt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.’ And as the masse was fynysshed I² recounted to charles the vysyon whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8 soule of Roulland in to paradys, & the deuylles bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd these wordes, balduyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, cam hastedly and said to charles how the crysten men 12 were dede & bytrayed, and how Rolland was hurte, and in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that euery man shold retorne backe, & there was a grete 16 bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater touched at the hert more than to ony other, auaunced hym for to goo thyder; and whan he came he fonde Rolland expyred, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20 al stratched. And anone Charles fyl doun vpon hym, and began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng hym on his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body, & myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24 torned to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte of sorowe, he sayd in thys wyse: ‘O conforte of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28 broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng to Iudas³ machabeus in prowesse, samblant to sampson⁴ in strengthe, & to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuew, fayr & wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32 fendour of crysten men, walle of clergye, staffe to wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Releuer of chyrches,

¹ orig. w hothey. ² m iij, back. ³ orig. Indas

⁴ m iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng¹, trewe in al
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloued
 4 of euery persone ! Alas ! why haue I brought the in
 to a straunge contreye² wherfor am I not dede with¹
 the² O Roulland², wherfor leuest thou me heuy &
 sorouful² helas ! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo²
 8 Alas ! sorouful, whyther shal I goo² I praye to almyghty
 god² that he conserue the ; I requyre thangellis of heuen
 that they be in thy companye ; I requyre the marters,
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y^t they wyl receuye
 12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauyd
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas ! Rolland, thou goost
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brouȝt the in com-
 forte. In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
 20 and² sorowed² his neuew Roulland². And he made hys
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that
 nyght, & dyd² doo make grete fyres and² grete lyghtes
 for to watche the body of Roulland ; & after he dyd²
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl
 sauour ; and² his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete
 28 contemplacion."

and, after, caused
his body to be
embalmed.

¶ How Olyuer was founden slain, and' of the
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of
 ganellon, whyche was hydous : capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the
 noble Olyuer stratched² oute in maner of a crosse,

Next morning the
body of Oliver is
found,

¹ orig. thith.

² m iiiij.

fastened to four stakes,
and flayed.

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn ; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth staues ; he was al to-faissched and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of

Charles vows he
will never cease
till he has avenged
the death of his
men.

Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles ¹sware by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynyme were moche² ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle ; 12

By a miracle the
day continues till
he overtakes the
Saracens, and

For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued ony thynge. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thynge. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litel whyle there were slain ijij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & sauied them self. Thenne themperour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no ferther, retorne to rouncyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24 oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28

Then Charles
enquires who was
the traitor.

The kyng charles ordeyned a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyȝt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, ³anone pynalle

Thierry accuses
Ganelon.

was slayne by Thyerry ; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperor Charles, wythoute goyng ony ferther, dyd to take ijij grete horses, & made to sytte

Charles appoints
a knight to fight
for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

¹ m iiiij, col. 2.

² orig. mocbe.

³ m iiiij, back.

on them iij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the other ij horses, & made hym to be drawen with the one 4 hors toward y^e eest, & that other toward the weste, that other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was 8 bounden vnto.

and Charles
has Ganelon
drawn in pieces
by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles
gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &
saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that
12 he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

WHAN the execucion was doon of Ganellon and
executed, charles & hys people cam in to the
place where the frensshe men had be slain, &
16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to
bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme
vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for
to mayntene them to bryng them in to theyr contreye;

The French army
attend to their
dead comrades:

20 Other buryed them in the same place, & ¹somme bare
theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth
oylle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse
they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymytoires
24 or chircheyerdes, ryght deuoute & pryncipally halowed
emonge the other, whych were sacred and blesseyd wyth
vij bysshops. That one of the cymytoires was in erles,
and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of

some they bury,
others they em-
balm and take
with them.

28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt
Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt
Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had
sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were
32 buried the moost party of the frensshe men slain and
destroyed in rounkyuale. Themperour dyd do bere

Two cemeteries
are made, one at

Arles, the other
at Bordeaux,

where the French
dead are buried.

¹ m iij, back, col. 2.

Roland is buried at Blois, at the Church of St. Romain.

Oliver and others are buried at Bordeaux.

Charles gives all the land for seven miles round to the church of St. Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints masses for the dead.

At Arles are buried Samson, Naymes, and others.

Constantine's body is taken to Rome.

rolland, the gloryous marter, vpon two mules courer'd wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the chyrche of saynt Romayn, the whyche he had edefyed and founded wyth chanonnes reguler, he dyd rychely 4 burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence ; & on hye, ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorye. Not wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken aweye and 8 borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx were buried olyuer & gaudeboy, ¹kyng of Fryse, Ogyer, kynge of denmark ; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne ; Garyn, duc of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12 rus, kynge of bourdeaulx ; Euglerius, kyng of guyan ; lambert, kyng of bourges, and galerus reygnaut, with v M other, charles gaf xij C vnces of siluer of money that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16 many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboue he gaf to the chyrche of saynt Romayn, and maad it subgette to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenantes 20 and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably to the sayd chyrche for charyte & loue of Rolland, and ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their passyon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24 yere perpetually xxx poure men be fedde and clothed competently, and thyrti messys songen for them that there were buried and entyered, and for alle them that were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28 was buried the counte of lengres ; samson, duc of bourgoyne ; Naymes, duc of bauyere ; Arnold de bellandus, and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32 uoste of ²Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other Romayns, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules themperour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vnces of syluer

and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where
4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperyally: capitulo vij

A fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles Charles goes to Vienna,
8 and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by yenne; & there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche holy man, abode, for he was wery and moche febled of the Payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne. where he leaves Turpin,
12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys contreye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to gyue thankynge to god & to saynt Denys of the vyc-
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sarsyns, paynyns, & myscreauntes. And after that he had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thappostle and saynt
20 Clement the pope had ¹doon in tyme passed, he maa^d constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche, ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf many rychesse to y^t chirche, & in token that fraunce
28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiiij pens of money
32 courant yerely & perpetuallly, & al they that shold gyue it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

He ordains that all kings of France shall be crowned at St. Denis,

and all bishops should be subject to the priest of that church.

Also that every person should pay to it yearly four pence,

¹ m v, back.

and any bondmen
who paid this
should be free.

He prays for the
souls of his
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-
pears to him,

and declares that
all who pay the
annual pence to
his church, shall
have forgiveness
of their sins.

And this payment
was called the
Frank of St.
Denis,

whence the coun-
try has its name
of France.

condycion, he wold they shold be franke & free of condycyon. And after anone these thynges ordeyned, he went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4 wold praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^t were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had regned that they myght be saued, and that the Payne that they had taken myȝt be to them the crowne of martyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse he prayed for al them that wold¹ paye gladly the pens aforesayd to his chyrche. As god wold, that nyght folowyng saynt denys appyered to hym, & sayd to 12 hym in thys manere: “O kynge, vnderstonde me, knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker, & he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespasses, 16 & that wyllyngly shal paye the penyes for the edefacyon of my chyrche & augmentyng the seruyce of god, they shal haue amendment of lyf and pardon of theyr synnes.” This vysyon on the morne themperour 20 recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of saynt denys, by cause that he was free and quyte of al 24 seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After came the custome that that londe whyche was called Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is named at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28 free of al seruage anenst al peple; and therfore the lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men owen to be honoure^d & praysed.

¹ m v, back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:
capitulo viij

¶ **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf
in vertuouse operacyons, And whan he felte the
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he
had tofore doon moche good, & enabled a chyrche of
our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and
gaf thereto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precyo-
sytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones
thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrist was named Charles,
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had
ordeyned for specyal loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to
20 hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn,
archebysshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, "I Tur-
24 pyn, archbysshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the
chyrche tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the
psalm, 'Deus in adiutoryum² meum intende.' I sawe
a companye of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,
beyng constrainyd to ansuere, sayd, 'we alle goo to
32 Acon to the deth of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.' Thenne I sayd

Charles retires to
Acon,

where he dies at
the age of 72,

leaving three sons

and three daugh-
ters.

His youngest son,
Louis, succeeds
him.

Turpin, at Vienna,

sees a vision of
devils,

who tell him of
the death of
Charles, and that
they mean to have
his soul.

¹ m vj.² orig. adiutoryum.³ m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.' " Anone after, The devils return, or he coude fynyshe hys psalme, the deuylls cam 4 retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente. " And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to byfore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?' that same deuyl ansuerd, that 'James of galye, frende 8 to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12 make in the name of hym, that his good dedes surmounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght haue noo thynge ne parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyl ¹vanysshed awaye," & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16 Charles, in the moneth of feueryere, rendred his soule to god holyly. For after that he retorne fro spayn he dyd but languysshe & appayre in hys body toward hys deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20 to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that the gloryous archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfication that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24 paracyon of hys syege in heuen. His sepulture was moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world, noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myȝt not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maaȝt an 28 arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, comprysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope, accompanied wyth prynces Romayns, archebysshops, bysshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32 lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperially with a fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

and tell him that
St. James pro-
duced so many
good works done
by Charles, that

they cannot have
his soul.

Charles is buried
with great mag-
nificence,
in a tomb over

which was set a
figure of himself,
crowned and
seated on his
throne.

¹ in vj. back.

a chayer of gold moche fayre and shynyng, and resem-
bled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon
his knees notably the texte of the four gospelles in
4 fayre letters ¹ of gold, & wyth the ryȝt hande he helde
the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre
Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed shold not
enclyne to eyther syde, hit was vnderset wyth a chayne
8 of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys
heed raught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made,
& the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed
with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and after
12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte,
as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees
were placed the
Gospels,

and in his left
hand the sceptre.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**HIS werke, accomlysshed to the playsyr of god
tofore wryton, conteyneth thre booke, by the
chapytres deuyded, as it appereþ openly to the
reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue
compryseþ in the separacyon and deuydying¹ of the
20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrist book speketh of the be-
gynnyng¹ of fraunce, and of the fyrist crysten kyng¹ of
fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moyen of his
wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng Pepyn, fader of
24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book
is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn
the lygnage of ²kyng Cloys took an ende in successyon
of the Royalme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrist book
28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourrysshed, of hys
corpulence, of hys etyng, of hys strengthe, of hys scy-
ence, & other werkes of magnyfycence. The second
book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst
32 Fyerabras, the meruaylous geaunte, sone of ballant,
Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kynge; & al the fyrist
parte of the second book is attrybuted to noble olyuer,

This work con-
tains three books,
divided into
chapters.

The first book
tells of the begin-
ning of France,

and of the yonth
of Charles.

The second book,
of the duel be-
tween Oliver and
Fierabras.

¹ m vj, back, col. 2.

² m vij.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and put in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the curtoys daughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4 relyques recouured, and other maters of grete meruaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne & galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8 constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson of Ganellon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12 peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and wryton. and ¹after that ony persone wyl here or rede of thys matere, the table made atte begynnnyng shal 16 shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

The third book
treats of the con-
quest of Spain by
Charles,

of the treason of
Ganelon,

and the death of
Charles.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

AS I haue sayd at the begynnnyng of thys present 20
werke, the escryptures and feates somme haue
ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memorye,
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs
ensaumple in ensyewyng and folowyngh them, & they 24
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-
standingyng is more contente to reteyne parables and
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstandingyng,
and also semblably thystoryes spekyng of our lord
Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, & cf his vertuous sub-
gettes, euery man ouȝt gladly to here and retenne them. 32
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

This work I have
written to be a
good example to
all,
how to rule their
lives.

And I have made
it at the request

man to fore named, Maister henry bolonnyer, chanonne of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate & reduyse in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as

of Master Bolo-
myer,
Canon of Lau-
sanne.

4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd ¹book I haue taken & drawnen oute of a book named myrrour hystoryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.

The first and third book I have trans-
lated from the
*Speculum His-
toriale*, and the
second from an
old French
romauence.

8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book, I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout fayllyng, by ordynaunce of chapytres & partyes of the sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.

12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good vnderstondyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde correxyon and amendment, and of the defaultes par-

I pray all who
may find a fault
in it to pardon it,

16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my wytte & vnderstondyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not vtre ne wryte thys matere withoute error. Neuer-

and attribute to
my want of learn-
ing, not my good-
will.

20 theles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacyon. To the whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllyngly
24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

¶ And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred & requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn, Maister wylliam dau²beny, one of the tresorers of the

And I, William
Caxton, have, at

28 Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord, late of noble memorye, kyng Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy, To reduce al these sayd hystoryes in to our Englysshe

the instance of
Sir W. Daubeny,

32 tongue, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn, prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to

translated this
book into English

And I pray all to

¹ m vij, back.

² m vij, back, col. 2.

excuse my rude
translation, and
forgive the faults
they may find.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and
reducyng, bysechyng theym that shal fynde faute to
correcte it, & in so doyng they shal deserue thankynge,
& I shal praye god for them, who brynge them and me, 4
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshē in
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xvij day of
Iuyn, the secondē yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, 8
And the yere of our lord MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord, & the
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seventh.

¶ Explicit *per* William Caxton.

And this work I
finished on the
18th June, in the
year of our Lord,
1483.

N O T E S.

Page 1, line 12. "hye hystoryes :" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.

p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *l'entendement commun est mieulx content a retenir pour la yimaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis*.

p. 1, l. 15. "gladly :" Fr. *volontiers*.

p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.

p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.

p. 2, l. 27. The "Book of the noble Hystoryes of Kynge Arthur and of certeyn of his Knygthes, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytrd and empnytred in the abbey westmestre ;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.

p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c. :" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.

p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool :" Fr. *gary*.

p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd :" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*

p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement : par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.

p. 19, l. 27. [he] : the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here : throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sege off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.

p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly :" Fr. *auctentiquement*.

p. 19, l. 32. "frentes :" clearly an error for "fontes :" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.

p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon :" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion : Fr. *se mist en religion*.

p. 26, l. 11. "conf[er]lye :" Fr. *pais*.

p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte :" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce :" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.

p. 27, l. 12. "ij hors shoen :" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.

p. 29, l. 1. "to hym :" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *on fait*.

p. 29, l. 12. "frequented :" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.

p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous :" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.

p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c. :" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.

p. 32, l. 21. "be enclosed in Iustyce :" Fr. *soies enclos en iustéce*.

p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deuz iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.

p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.

p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same coutreye, &c. :" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.

p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constan'ynople*.

p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.

p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c. :" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moy de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir veoir, &c.*

p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c. :" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.

p. 39, l. 4. "of rome :" orig. *a rome*.

p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste :" add. Fr. *adioindre*. On the word adjust, as representing the two Latin forms *adjuxtare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.

p. 39, l. 10. "I haue not founde in the book competent :" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.

p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babyloyne* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdone* will be found in Dr. Hausknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.

p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.

p. 41, l. 13. "as euyl and olde :" Fr. *comme mauvais viella-t*.

p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugtyf :" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.

p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c. :" hurt almost to the death.

p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdone of Babylone*, pp. 4 *et seq.*

p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur :" in the original the same.

p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.

p. 48, l. 14. "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.

p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.

p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or*.

p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce :" Fr. *logis*.

p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure :" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys hour, &c. :" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous ottroie*.

p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe :" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.

p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.

p. 50, l. 33. "secretly :" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.

p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuvel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.

p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become :" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.

p. 52, l. 22. "he setted nought by hym :" took no thought or heed of him.

p. 53, l. 9. "or :" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.

p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntrue lui vaillet."

p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous :" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.

p. 56, l. 12. "of the rounde table." An addition of the translator.

p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.

p. 56, l. 27. "flagons :" *barilz*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and Introd., p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."

p. 57, l. 21. "Ternagaunt :" Fr. *Taluagaunt*.

p. 57, l. 30. "goddes :" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieulx*.

p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye :" Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.

p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone :" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.

p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose :" *i. e.* I am sure.

p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of Ferumbras' swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been Plorance, Baptism, and *Garbain*.

p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye :"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.

p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musagrine*, and *Courtain*.

p. 60, l. 6. “barylles.” See p. 56, l. 27, and note.

p. 60, l. 8. “bended:” bound, banded: Fr. *bende*.

p. 61, l. 12. “seen:” *i. e.* seeing, considering.

p. 61, l. 35. “thou remembrest:” Fr. *tu tauises*, *i. e.* thou thinkest of.

p. 62, l. 18. “utterance:” Fr. *a oultrance*.

p. 62, l. 23. “at this stroke:” Fr. *a cestuy cop*.

p. 62, l. 34. “bowed and entred:” Fr. *ploiez et entrez*.

p. 63, l. 1. “tronchonné:” Fr. *tronconne*, *i. e.* broken to pieces.

p. 63, l. 5. “in a grete whyle:” Fr. *dune grant peece*, *i. e.* for a great while.

p. 63, l. 12. “made:” an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.

p. 64, l. 4. “he was bowed afterward:” Fr. *par derriere*.

p. 64, l. 14. “playe:” the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: “a *Bucler* plaer, *gladiator*; a *Bucler* playnge, *gladiatura*. *þe* Swerde & *y^e* bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*.” In the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 212, we have the expression “*pleieð* mid *sweordes*.” See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.

p. 64, l. 32. “reioye:” Fr. *resiogr*.

p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.

p. 68, l. 21. “made a lytel course:” ran away a little distance.

p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver’s drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht’s note to the latter, l. 1191.

p. 68, l. 29. “beyng^t nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c.” See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.

p. 69, l. 12. [“he:”] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver’s horse.

p. 69, l. 16. “aboue:” Fr. *oultre*, *i. e.* out of, away from.

p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as “*vij*” read “*xij*.”

p. 71, l. 11. “tenestre:” read “*terrestre*.”

p. 71, l. 21. “*Longyus*.” On the legend of *Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat’s notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.

p. 71, l. 31. “thou.” Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.

p. 72, l. 6. “for hys gloryous medytacyon.” In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. “*Neuertheles:*” Fr. *touttefois*.

p. 72, l. 16. “soo coueytous in smytyng:” Fr. *conuoiteux et affoibly*.

p. 72, l. 17. “a-slepe:” *i. e.* numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

p. 72, l. 19. "at vtteraunce :" *a oultrace* : comp. p. 62, l. 18.

p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the :" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.

p. 74, l. 5. "vylete :" Fr. *vilte*.

p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.

p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl :" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.

p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym :" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle ferte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is Ferumbras.

p. 78, l. 16. "enforced :" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—
"Pan Firumbras enforcede hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."

p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart :" Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—
"*falsarz an feþerd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld :" Fr. *crapaule*, a toad.

p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree :" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinum fructus eius* A.)." *Apple* was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.

p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de traïs*."

p. 81, l. 28. "faus darter." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.

p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete :" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre*.

p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before *makyngt* makes the sentence rather awkward.

p. 82, l. 27. "Amancdys :" Fr. *Amandis*.

p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.

p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984 :
"at aualyng of an hulle."

p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded :" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.

p. 84, l. 31. "ones :" at some time or other.

p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.

p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden :" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.
"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.
At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne taste is wounde."

p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run : "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerasbras, the ledar and captayn of all ?"

p. 87, l. 6. "knyght :" Fr. *damoiseau*.

p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.

p. 87, l. 30. "yeman :" Fr. *vassal*.

p. 88, l. 10. "brullant :" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.

p. 89, l. 3. "strayt :" Fr. *estroite*.

p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.

p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune :" Fr. *soubmis a faulx fortune*.

p. 89, l. 31. "what I make" : Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.

p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*

p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrye :" Fr. *faicte dune fae*.

p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.

p. 91, l. 11. "doughter :" Fr. *la fille*.

p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke :" Fr. *eult enuye les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.

p. 91, l. 31. "dysfioneste :" Fr. *inhonnestete*.

p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde :" *i. e.* on the other hand, again.

p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayns :" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.

p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth :" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.

p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute :" *i. e.* very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre *fro* to be oute."

p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.

p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she

"a rope to hem lete down goon
That aboveñ was teyde faste."

p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre :" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, *i. e.* an enclosed yard or space.

p. 94, l. 27. "camuse :" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.

p. 94, l. 35. "varlet :" a repetition of the original French word.

p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs : *se*

dauenture quelque, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in double : " Fr. *en cultre double*, i. e. fear.

p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.

p. 96, l. 6. "lucafар :" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.

p. 97, l. 1. "damage :" Fr. *dommaige*.

p. 97, l. 4. The French reads : *et plusieures aultres terriennes victoires*.

p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned :" Fr. *detenu*.

p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1663, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See *Introduction*, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.

p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew : see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.

p. 99, l. 7. "lese :" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.

p. 101, l. 15. "and :" if.

p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.

p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled :" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.

p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer :" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantrible, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."

p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."

p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes" : in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland : the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.

p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82 ; where Naymes, describing Charles, says :

"He sittes his duspers Imange,
With white berde large and lange
Faire of flesche & felle.
With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kynghe þat es so strange,
His doghety men imelle."

p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced ecbe other & kyssed :" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.

p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.

p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes :" Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite muser en tes folies.*

p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe :" Fr. *na plus cure de ioeur.*

p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte :" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.

p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoyn ted, &c. :" Fr. *trestien apparte il tantost fut par terre verre.*

p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*

p. 122, l. 23. "Marbyn :" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Maubyn.

p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c. :" slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*

p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be :" Fr. *son espoux advenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.

p. 128, l. 11. "doubted :" feared. Fr. *redoubte.*

p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre :" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*

p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c. :" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrasin.*

p. 130, l. 29. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c. :" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.

p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure :" Fr. *si hardis et desmesurez.*

p. 134, l. 27. "hir loue and tocomyng husbond :" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.

p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c. :" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt.*

p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete facyon :" Fr. *moreau de grant fasson.*

p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured :" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recouure.*

p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents :" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.

p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c. :" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pleust de la venir baisier, en disant que selle viuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere l'admiral seroit vne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.

p. 142, l. 3. "at vtterance :" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.

p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet :" Fr. *ne vous esmaies encore.*

p. 142, l. 12. "beurage :" Fr. *beuuraige*, a draught.

p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c. :" Fr. *car ilz veoient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*

p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon :" in the *Sowdone* Balan smashes Mahound.

p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper :" Fr. *les francoys nous veullent faire refrodier notre soupper* == wish to make our supper cold.

p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynyme must re-torne :" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.

p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte :" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.

p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo :" offered himself, volunteered.

p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone :" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa personne*.

p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other :" Fr. *ung iour entre les aultres*.

p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture :" Fr. *a son aduenture*.

p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly :" Fr. *il doutba entierement* == feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.

p. 151, l. 6. "dropped :" Fr. *platz* == broad.

p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke :" Fr. *lattaint du trauers du col*.

p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partie :" == so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.

p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant l'admiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."

p. 155, l. 8. "Orages :" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngras ; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.

p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world :" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.

p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c. :" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.

p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.

p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautefuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.

p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determined :" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.

p. 161, l. 29. "as a theef attaynt :" Fr. *comme l'arron prouue*.

p. 163, l. 12. "deffende :" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.

p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye :" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.

p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreaunte, &c. :" Fr. *reclame recreant et tenu reboute*.

p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede :" Fr. *baissa le menton*.

p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c. :" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurcy*.

p. 170, l. 27. "confanon :" so in the original French.

p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c. :" Fr. *qui auoit faict sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.

p. 172, l. 11. "facyon :" = state of affairs.

p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doyng :" = while this was happening.

p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbras*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.

p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.

p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c. :" Fr. *il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.

p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused :" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "Abuser. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. S'abuser. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.

p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng Coldroe tempested hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de mommiere*: *tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.

p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed :" Fr. *quil soit desensle*(?).

p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde :" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.

p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripas first sees the French ariny advancing.

p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse :" Fr. *en larbre*.

p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes :" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses parolles*.

p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyng :" Fr. *par presumacion* = by supposition.

p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulfe :" Fr. *sans faulfe* = without fail.

p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c. :" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que faire*.

p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon :" Fr. *grant abusion*.

p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c. :" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusion en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.

p. 202, l. 22. "al rauysshed :" Fr. *tout ravy*.

p. 204, l. 7. "ouerthrew to the erthe :" Fr. *vont tomber par terre*.

p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releued many and dyuers chyrches :" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.

p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.

p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not leue herby :" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se voulst tenir a cecy*.

p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences :" Fr. *fist aulcunes experimantacions*.

p. 213, l. 5. "took hede :" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.

p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *eulx qui estoient presens et leurs successeours furent francs et liberez, les taillables furent a leurs drois comme quilz furent condicionez*.

p. 215, l. 35. "felow :" Fr. *compaignon de escoc*.

p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon :" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.

p. 221, l. 17. "demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone :" Fr. *demande a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.

p. 222, l. 17. "soo vlaynsly :" Fr. *si villement*.

p. 231, l. 1. "surpryzed :" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.

p. 237, l. 1. "dystourned :" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourba*.

p. 237, l. 21. "lepte :" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.

p. 242, l. 6. "to-faissched and broken :" Fr. *il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu*.

p. 251, l. 27. "daubenye." See *Introduction*, p. 7.



G L O S S A R Y.

Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.
 Abuse, *v.* 206/19, deceive.
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.
 Accomplyshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.
 Accumyld, *pa. par.* 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
 Acoward, *v.* 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
 Adiouste, *v.* 39/9, to add, append.
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.
 Affectuously, *adv.* 13/12, affectionately, with affection.
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49/20, praised.
 Ampull, *s.* 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
 And, *conj.* 101/15, if.
 Anenst, *prep.* 246/29, towards, as regards.
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76/28, reached to, touched.
 Arbalastre, *s.* 104/12, a cross-bow.
 Aresonned, *pa. par.* 52/20, questioned.
 Attayned, *pt. s.* 190/19, reached, struck.
 Attones, *adv.* 56/14, at once, at the same time.
 Aualed, *pt. s.* 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/34, let down, lowered.
 Bacynet, *s.* 32/15, a small helmet.

Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.
 Baston, *s.* 182/4, a staff.
 Batayl, *s.* 232/35, a battalion, a division of an army.
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89/20, bathed, plunged.
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95/20, baths.
 Becke, *s.* 20/30, a beak, bill.
 Behoeful, *v.* 145/25, advisable, advantageous.
 Belfraye, *s.* 175/7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82/1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeylde.
 Bowdraudz, *s.* 189/31, a bowshot.
 Boystous, *a.* 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101/35, spurred.
 Buscage, *s.* 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.
 Camuse, *a.* 94/27, short, thick-nosed.
 Chauffed, *pa. par.* 95/20, warmed, heated.
 Complyces, *s. pl.* 164/33, accomplices.
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24/34, confiscated.
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19/32, suitably, fittingly.
 Corobere, *v.* 24/9, to strengthen.
 Crapauld, *s.* 79/20, a toad.

Cremeur, <i>s.</i> 46/19, dread. “Cremeur, feare, dread.”— Cotgrave.	Escrye, <i>v.</i> 77/27, to call upon, invoke.
Cresme, <i>s.</i> 20/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See <i>Cath. Anglicum</i> , <i>s. v.</i> Creme.	Faus, <i>a.</i> 79/18. See note.
Dedyed, <i>pa. par.</i> 16/35, dedicated.	Faysyble, <i>a.</i> 49/34, possible to be done, feasable.
Delyuer, <i>a.</i> 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern <i>clever</i> .	Felounye, <i>s.</i> 109/30, daring, recklessness.
Depesshe, <i>v. imp.</i> 53/9, hasten, hurry.	Fere, <i>v.</i> 140/5, to frighten.
Derked, <i>pt. s.</i> 211/12, was eclipsed.	Ferfully, <i>adv.</i> 193/32, in fear, timidly.
Descerkled, <i>pt. s.</i> 102/7, cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.	Fette, <i>pt. s.</i> 223/26, fetched.
Descouuerd, <i>pa. par.</i> 75/26, uncovered, deprived.	Fliese, <i>s.</i> 91/1, a fleece.
Desmaylled, <i>pa. par.</i> 69/10, deprived of the mails or plates.	Florysshe, <i>v.</i> 36/3, to bud, flower.
Disrenge, <i>v.</i> 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.	Florysshed, <i>pa. par.</i> 108/23, flowing, long and wide.
Dyshoneste, <i>s.</i> 91/31, filth, nastiness.	Formosyte, <i>s.</i> 198/10, beauty.
Dyssymyled, <i>pa. par.</i> 13/22, disguised.	Frequented, <i>pt. s.</i> 29/12, made frequent use of.
Dystourned, <i>pt. s.</i> 237/1, turned aside.	Geayler, <i>s.</i> 89/1, jailer.
Dystrouble, <i>v.</i> 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.	Glaues, <i>sb. pl.</i> 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.
Egal, <i>s.</i> 59/2, equal, match.	Gree, <i>s.</i> 96/10, pleasure, delight.
Empesshed, <i>pa. par.</i> 219/14, hindered, obstructed.	Greued, <i>pa. par.</i> 147/26, hurt, injured.
Enforced, <i>pt. s.</i> 78/16, exerted.	Guarysshed, <i>pa. par.</i> 17/16, cured, healed.
Engyne, <i>s.</i> 165/21, craft, art, skill.	Habylle, <i>a.</i> 169/32, active, nimble.
Enhardyed, <i>pt. pl.</i> 192/22, encouraged, took courage.	Harnoys, <i>s.</i> 105/34, equipments, outfit.
Ensyewyng, <i>v.</i> 250/24, following.	Houyng, <i>pr. par.</i> 36/16, hovering.
Enterbraced, <i>pt. pl.</i> 113/25, embraced.	Iape, <i>v.</i> 60/22, play, mock.
Enterprenour, <i>s.</i> 166/10, enterpriser, actor.	Ionques, <i>s. pl.</i> 200/1, rushes. See <i>Cath. Anglicum</i> , <i>s. v.</i> Ionkett.
Entretene, <i>v.</i> 46/32, to treat, behave towards.	Journeye, <i>s.</i> 216/9, a day's journey.
Entyer, <i>a.</i> 237/32, earnest, hearty.	Lawhe, <i>v.</i> 53/12, to laugh.
Entyered, <i>pa. par.</i> 244/27, interred.	Lawhyng, <i>a.</i> 90/15, laughing.
Entyerly, <i>adv.</i> 149/28, earnestly, very greatly. “Entyrlly: in-time.”— <i>Cathol. Anglicum</i> .	Lesynges, <i>s. pl.</i> 106/8, lies.
	Leteth, <i>pr. s.</i> 212/24, causes. <i>Leteth the wete</i> = tells you, sends notice to you.
	Lette, <i>pa. par.</i> 219/14, obstructed, hindered.

Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.

Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.

Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.

Lyces, *s. pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.

Lynnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.

Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.

Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, throughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.

Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.

Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.

Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.

Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.

Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.

Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.

Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.

Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.

Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.
“Ouer alle; *passim*, *vbicunque*, *genus loquendi est vbique*.”—*Cath. Anglicum*.

Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.

Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.

Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.

Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.

Priued, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.

Purchaced, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.

Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.

Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.

Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.

Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.

Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.

Releued, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.

Remysed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.

Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.

Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.

Rescowed, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.

Retcheth, *3 pr. s.* 22/3, cares, reckts.

Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.

Salewed, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.

Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.

Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.

Sommyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.

Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.

Sperhawk, *s.* 193/32, a sparrow-hawk.

Stratcheden, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.

Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.

Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.

Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y^e See.

Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.

Sygees, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.

Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.

Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.

Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.

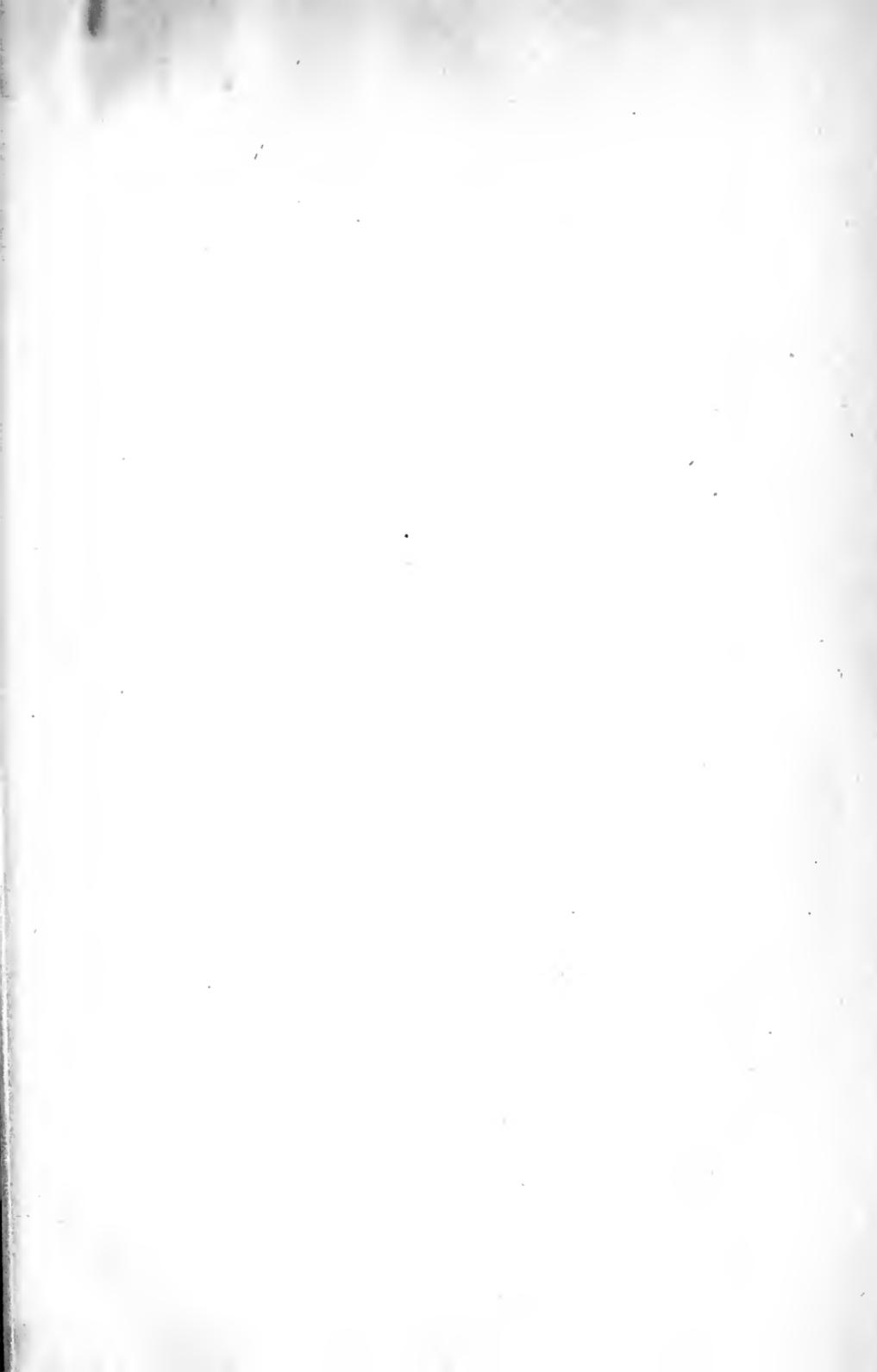
To-frusshed, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.

Trauaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.

Tronchonné, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.

Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

Tyerce, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.	Wende, <i>pt. s.</i> 36/13, thought, intended.
Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.	Wesshe, <i>pt. s.</i> 66/21, washed.
Vnnethe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.	Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyen-browes</i> .
Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.	Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.





PR
1119
E5
no. 36-37

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

